



**HAL**  
open science

## (Meta) Kernelization

Hans L. Bodlaender, Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Eelko Penninkx,  
Saket Saurabh, Dimitrios M. Thilikos

► **To cite this version:**

Hans L. Bodlaender, Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Eelko Penninkx, Saket Saurabh, et al.. (Meta) Kernelization. *Journal of the ACM (JACM)*, Association for Computing Machinery, 2016, 63 (5), pp.#44. 10.1145/2973749 . lirmm-01483628

**HAL Id: lirmm-01483628**

**<https://hal-lirmm.ccsd.cnrs.fr/lirmm-01483628>**

Submitted on 22 Jan 2018

**HAL** is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L'archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire **HAL**, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d'enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.

# (Meta) Kernelization<sup>1</sup>

Hans L. Bodlaender<sup>2</sup>    Fedor V. Fomin<sup>3,4</sup>    Daniel Lokshtanov<sup>3</sup>  
 Eelko Penninx<sup>2</sup>    Saket Saurabh<sup>3,5</sup>    Dimitrios M. Thilikos<sup>6</sup>

September 2013

## Abstract

In a parameterized problem, every instance  $I$  comes with a positive integer  $k$ . The problem is said to admit a *polynomial kernel* if, in polynomial time, one can reduce the size of the instance  $I$  to a polynomial in  $k$ , while preserving the answer. In this work we give two meta-theorems on kernelization. The first theorem says that all problems expressible in Counting Monadic Second Order Logic and satisfying a coverability property admit a polynomial kernel on graphs of bounded genus. Our second result is that all problems that have finite integer index and satisfy a weaker coverability property admit a linear kernel on graphs of bounded genus. These theorems unify and extend all previously known kernelization results for planar graph problems.

**Keywords:** graph algorithms, counting monadic second order logic, parameterized complexity, embedded graphs, preprocessing, kernelization, treewidth, protrusions, finite integer index.

---

<sup>1</sup>A preliminary version of this article appeared in [Proceedings of the 50th Annual IEEE Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science \(FOCS 2009\)](#), IEEE, 2009, pp. 629–638.

<sup>2</sup>Utrecht University, Utrecht, the Netherlands. Email: {H.L.Bodlaender|penninx}@uu.nl

<sup>3</sup>University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway. Email: {fomin|daniello}@ii.uib.no

<sup>4</sup>Supported by “Rigorous Theory of Preprocessing”, ERC Advanced Investigator Grant 267959.

<sup>5</sup>The Institute of Mathematical Sciences, CIT Campus, Chennai, India. Email: saket@imsc.res.in. Supported by “Parameterized Approximation”, ERC Starting Grant 306992.

<sup>6</sup>Department of Mathematics, National and Kapodistrian University of Athens, Athens, Greece and AIGCo project-team, CNRS, LIRMM, France. Email: sedthilk@thilikos.info. Co-financed by the E.U. (European Social Fund - ESF) and Greek national funds through the Operational Program “Education and Lifelong Learning” of the National Strategic Reference Framework (NSRF) - Research Funding Program: “Thales. Investing in knowledge society through the European Social Fund”.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Definitions and Notations</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	Preliminaries . . . . .	9
2.1.1	Parameterized algorithms and kernels . . . . .	10
2.1.2	Tree-width . . . . .	10
2.2	Boundaried Graphs . . . . .	11
2.3	Finite Integer Index . . . . .	12
2.4	Structures and its properties . . . . .	13
2.5	Counting Monadic Second Order Logic and its properties . . . . .	14
2.6	Boundaried structures . . . . .	16
<b>3</b>	<b>A variant of Courcelle’s Theorem</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Derivation of our results</b>	<b>26</b>
4.1	Meta-algorithmic properties . . . . .	26
4.2	The meta-algorithm . . . . .	27
4.3	Two master theorems . . . . .	28
4.4	Problems having the algorithmic and combinatorial properties . . . . .	29
4.5	Derivation of Theorems 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 . . . . .	29
<b>5</b>	<b>Reduction Rules</b>	<b>30</b>
5.1	Model checking on structures . . . . .	30
5.2	Protrusion replacement families for annotated $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] Problems . . . . .	31
5.3	Protrusion replacement for annotated $p$ -EQ-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] Problems . . . . .	37
5.4	Protrusion replacement for annotated $p$ -MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] Problems . . . . .	39
5.5	A protrusion replacement family based for problems that have FII . . . . .	43
<b>6</b>	<b>Combinatorial results</b>	<b>44</b>
6.1	Definitions from graph theory . . . . .	44
6.2	Decomposition lemma for coverable problems . . . . .	45
6.3	Decomposition lemma for quasi-coverable problems . . . . .	49
<b>7</b>	<b>Criteria for proving FII</b>	<b>56</b>
7.1	Strong monotonicity . . . . .	56
7.2	FII for $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems . . . . .	57
<b>8</b>	<b>Implications of our results</b>	<b>59</b>
8.1	Preliminary tools . . . . .	60
8.2	Covering minors . . . . .	60
8.3	Packing minors . . . . .	62

8.4	Subgraph Covering and Packing . . . . .	65
8.5	Domination and its variants . . . . .	67
8.6	Scattered sets . . . . .	71
8.7	Problems on Directed Graphs . . . . .	73
8.8	A direct proof of FII for a minimization problem . . . . .	74
8.9	Summary of consequences of our results . . . . .	77
<b>9</b>	<b>Open Problems and Further Directions</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Problem Compendium</b>	<b>90</b>
A.1	Minimization problems that have FII and are quasi-coverable – <i>linear kernels for graphs of bounded genus</i> . . . . .	90
A.2	Maximization problems that have FII and are quasi-coverable – <i>linear kernels for graphs of bounded genus</i> . . . . .	90
A.3	Problems that do not have FII and are coverable $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO – <i>polynomial kernels for graphs of bounded genus</i> . . . . .	90
A.4	A problem that has FII but is not quasi-coverable. . . . .	90
A.5	A quasi-coverable problem that has no FII. . . . .	90
A.6	Problems that do not have FII and they are not quasi-coverable. . . . .	90

## 1 Introduction

Preprocessing (data reduction or kernelization) as a strategy of coping with hard problems is universally used in almost every implementation. The history of preprocessing, like applying reduction rules to simplify truth functions, can be traced back to the 1950's [65]. A natural question in this regard is how to measure the quality of the preprocessing rules proposed for a specific problem. For a long time the mathematical analysis of polynomial time preprocessing algorithms was neglected. The basic reason for this anomaly was that if we start with an instance  $I$  of an NP-hard problem and can show that, in polynomial time, we can replace this with an equivalent instance  $I'$  with  $|I'| < |I|$  then that would imply  $P=NP$  in classical complexity. The situation changed drastically with advent of parameterized complexity. Combining tools from parameterized and classical complexities it has become possible to derive upper and lower bounds on the sizes of reduced instances, or so called *kernels*.

**Kernelization.** In parameterized complexity each problem instance comes with a parameter  $k$  and the parameterized problem is said to admit a *polynomial kernel* if there is a polynomial time algorithm (the degree of polynomial is independent of  $k$ ), called a *kernelization* algorithm, that reduces the input instance down to an instance with size bounded by a polynomial  $p(k)$  in  $k$ , while preserving the answer. This reduced instance is called a  $p(k)$  *kernel* for the problem. If  $p(k) = O(k)$ , then we call it a *linear kernel*

(for a more formal definition, see Subsection 2.1.1). Kernelization has been extensively studied in the realm of parameterized complexity, resulting in polynomial kernels for a variety of problems. Notable examples of kernelization include a  $2k$ -sized vertex kernel for VERTEX COVER [20], a  $355k$  vertex kernel for DOMINATING SET on planar graphs [5], which later was improved to a  $67k$  vertex kernel [19], and an  $O(k^2)$  kernel for FEEDBACK VERTEX SET [70] parameterized by the solution size.

One of the most important results in the area of kernelization was given by [5]. They gave the first linear sized kernel for the DOMINATING SET problem on planar graphs. The work of [5] triggered an explosion of papers on kernelization, and in particular on kernelization of problems on planar graphs. Combining the ideas of [5] with problem specific data reduction rules, kernels of linear sizes were obtained for a variety of parameterized problems on planar graphs including CONNECTED VERTEX COVER, MINIMUM EDGE DOMINATING SET, MAXIMUM TRIANGLE PACKING, EFFICIENT EDGE DOMINATING SET, INDUCED MATCHING, FULL-DEGREE SPANNING TREE, FEEDBACK VERTEX SET, CYCLE PACKING, and CONNECTED DOMINATING SET [3, 5, 15, 16, 19, 46, 47, 53, 59, 62]. DOMINATING SET has received special attention from kernelization view point, leading to a linear kernel on graphs of bounded genus [41] and polynomial kernel on graphs excluding a fixed graph  $H$  as a minor and on  $d$ -degenerated graphs [6, 64]. We refer to the survey of [45] for a detailed treatment of the area of kernelization.

Most of the papers on linear kernels on planar graphs have the following idea in common: find an appropriate region decomposition (essentially a partitioning of the vertex set into graphs of small diameter) of the input planar graph based on the problem in question, and then perform *problem specific* rules to reduce the part of the graph inside each region. The first step towards the general abstraction of all these algorithms was initiated by [46], who proved a general decomposition theorem for all problems with a specific distance property. Combining this decomposition theorem with problem specific reduction rules yields linear kernels for various problems on planar graphs. Thus all previous work on kernelization was strongly based on the design of reduction rules particular to the problem in question. In this paper we step aside and find properties of problems, such as *expressibility in Counting Monadic Second Order Logic (CMSO)*, which allows these reduction rules to be automated.

**Algebraic reduction techniques.** The idea of graph replacement for algorithms dates back to Fellows and Langston [31]. Arnborg et al. [7] proved that every set of graphs of bounded treewidth that is definable by a Monadic Second Order Logic (MSO) formula is also definable by reduction. By making use of algebraic reductions, Arnborg et al. [7] obtained a linear time algorithm for MSO expressible problems on graphs of bounded treewidth. Bodlaender and de Fluiter [11, 17, 26] generalized these ideas in several ways—in particular, they applied it to a number of optimization problems. It is also important to mention the work of Bodlaender and Hagerup [14], who used the concept of graph reduction to obtain parallel algorithms for MSO expressible problems on graphs

of bounded treewidth.

**Algorithmic meta-theorems.** Our results can be seen as what Grohe and Kreutzer call *algorithmic meta-theorems* [43, 58]. Meta-theorems bring out the deep relations between logic and combinatorial structures, which is a fundamental issue of computational complexity. Such theorems also yield a better understanding of the scope of general algorithmic techniques and the limits of tractability. A typical example of meta-theorem is the celebrated Courcelle’s theorem [22] which states that all graph properties definable in MSO can be decided in linear time on graphs of bounded treewidth. More recent examples of such meta-theorems state that all first-order definable properties on planar graphs can be decided in linear time [42] and that all first-order definable optimization problems on classes of graphs with excluded minors can be approximated in polynomial time to any given approximation ratio [25]. Our meta-theorems not only give a uniform and natural explanation for a large family of known kernelization results but also provide a variety of new results. In what follows we build up towards our theorems. We first give necessary definitions needed to formulate our results.

**Parameterized graph problems.** A parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  in general can be seen as a subset of  $\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+$  where, in each instance  $(x, k)$  of  $\Pi$ ,  $x$  encodes a graph and  $k$  is the parameter (we denote by  $\mathbb{Z}^+$  the set of all non-negative integers). In this paper we extend this definition by permitting the parameter  $k$  to be negative with the additional constraint that either all pairs with non-positive value of the parameter are in  $\Pi$  or that no such pair is in  $\Pi$ . Formally, a parametrized problem  $\Pi$  is a subset of  $\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  where for all  $(x_1, k_1), (x_2, k_2) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  with  $k_1, k_2 < 0$  it holds that  $(x_1, k_1) \in \Pi$  if and only if  $(x_2, k_2) \in \Pi$ . This extended definition encompasses the traditional one and is being adopted for technical reasons (see Subsection 2.3). In many cases, in the pair  $(x, k)$ ,  $x$  will encode an *annotated graph*, that is a pair  $(G, S)$  where  $S$  is a subset of the vertices of  $G$ , i.e.,  $S$  contains the *annotated* vertices of  $G$ . In this paper, we mostly work on problems restricted to certain graph classes. For this reason, given a graph class  $\mathcal{G}$ , we use notation  $\Pi \upharpoonright \mathcal{G}$  for the set of instances of  $\Pi$  minus the instances  $(x, k)$  where  $x$  does not encode a graph in  $\mathcal{G}$ . That way, the new problem  $\Pi' = \Pi \upharpoonright \mathcal{G}$  is a subset of  $\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  that corresponds to the restriction of  $\Pi$  to graphs in  $\mathcal{G}$ . In this paper we mostly apply such restrictions to bounded genus graphs. We denote by  $\mathcal{G}_r$  the class of graphs that are 2-cell embeddable in some surface of Euler genus at most  $r$ .

**$r$ -coverable problems.** Let  $G = (V, E)$  be a graph embedded without crossings in a surface. (For more details on graph embeddings, see Subsection 6.) The *radial distance* between two vertices  $x, y$  of  $G$  in this embedding is one less than the minimum length of an alternating sequence of vertices and faces starting from  $x$  and ending in  $y$ , such that every two consecutive elements of this sequence are incident with each other. Given a set  $S \subseteq V$ , we define  $\mathbf{R}_G^r(S)$  to be the set of all vertices of  $G$  whose radial distance from some vertex of  $S$  is at most  $r$ .

Let  $r$  be a non-negative integer. We say that a parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  has the *radial  $r$ -coverability property* if all YES-instances of  $\Pi$  encode graphs embeddable in some surface of Euler genus at most  $r$  and there exist such an embedding and a set  $S \subseteq V$  such that  $|S| \leq r \cdot k$  and  $\mathbf{R}_G^r(S) = V$ . We say that a problem  $\Pi$  is *radially  $r$ -coverable* if either  $\Pi$  or its “complement in  $\mathcal{G}_r$ ”, namely  $\overline{\Pi} \cap \mathcal{G}_r$  has the radial  $r$ -coverability property, (here,  $\overline{\Pi} = \Sigma^* \setminus \Pi$ ). Every problem  $\Pi$  that has the radial  $r$ -coverability property is radially  $r$ -coverable. However, the converse is not necessarily true. In particular, the  $p$ -INDEPENDENT SET problem can easily be seen to be radially  $r$ -coverable but it does not have the radial  $r$ -coverability property.

**$r$ -quasi-coverable problems.** A parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  has the *radial  $r$ -quasi-coverability property* if all YES-instances of  $\Pi$  encode graphs embeddable in some surface of Euler genus at most  $r$  and there exist such an embedding and a set  $S \subseteq V$  such that  $|S| \leq r \cdot k$  and  $\mathbf{tw}(G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S)) \leq r$  (by  $\mathbf{tw}(G)$  we denote the treewidth of  $G$ , for the formal definition, see Subsection 2.1.2). We say that a problem  $\Pi$  is *radially  $r$ -quasi-coverable*, if either  $\Pi$  or  $\overline{\Pi} \cap \mathcal{G}_r$  has the radial  $r$ -quasi-coverability property. Every problem  $\Pi$  that has the radial  $r$ -quasi-coverability property is radially  $r$ -quasi-coverable. Again, the converse is not necessarily true. For an example, the  $p$ -CYCLE PACKING problem is radially  $r$ -quasi-coverable but it does not have the radial  $r$ -quasi-coverability property.

Notice that if a problem is  $r$ -coverable then it is also  $r$ -quasi-coverable. From now on, for simplicity, we drop the terms “radial” and “radially” and we simply use the terms “ $r$ -quasi-coverability property” or “ $r$ -quasi-coverable”.

**Counting Monadic Second Order Logic.** We use CMSO [8, 24, 23], an extension of MSO, as a basic tool to express properties of vertex/edge sets in graphs. As in this section our aim is to define a series of CMSO-based problem properties, we avoid the formal definitions of CMSO and we postpone them for Subsection 2.5.

Our first result concerns a parameterized analogue of graph optimization problems where the objective is to find a maximum or minimum sized vertex or edge set satisfying a CMSO-expressible property. We now define a class of parameterized problems, called  *$p$ -MIN-CMSO problems*<sup>1</sup>, with one problem for each CMSO sentence  $\psi$  on graphs, where  $\psi$  has a free vertex set variable  $S$ . The  $p$ -MIN-CMSO problem defined by  $\psi$  is denoted by  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] and defined as follows.

$p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ]  
*Input:* A graph  $G = (V, E)$  and a non-negative integer  $k$   
*Parameter:*  $k$   
*Question:* Is there a subset  $S \subseteq V$  such that  $|S| \leq k$  and  $(G, S) \models \psi$ ?

<sup>1</sup>We follow the notation given in the book by Flum and Grohe [32] and add “ $p$ ” in front of names of problems to emphasize that these are parameterized problems.

In other words,  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  is a subset  $\Pi$  of  $\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  where for every  $(x, k) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $(x, k) \in \Pi$  if and only if there exists a set  $S \subseteq V$  where  $|S| \leq k$  such that the graph  $G$  encoded by  $x$  together with  $S$  satisfy  $\psi$ , i.e.,  $(G, S) \models \psi$ . For  $(x, k) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^-$  we know that  $(x, k) \notin \Pi$ . In this case, we say that  $\Pi$  is *definable by the sentence  $\psi$*  and that  $\Pi$  is a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$ .

The definition of  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  (resp.  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$ ) problem is the same as the one for  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem with the difference that now we ask that  $|S| = k$  (resp.  $|S| \geq k$ ) and that for any  $(x, k) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^-$  we have that  $(x, k) \in \Pi$ . We can also extend the notion of a  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems to edge versions. In these problems  $S$  is a subset of edges instead of a subset of vertices. All of our results can be straightforwardly extended to this alternate setting. In particular, an edge set problem on graph  $G = (V, E)$  can be transformed to a vertex subset problem on the edge-vertex incidence graph  $I(G)$  of  $G$ , which is a bipartite graph with vertex bipartition's  $V$  and  $E$  with edges between vertices  $v \in V$  and  $e \in E$  if and only if  $v$  is incident with  $e$  in  $G$ . Observe that if  $G$  can be embedded in surface  $\Sigma$  then so does  $I(G)$  and even the treewidth of these graphs only differ by a factor of 2. To make the translation work throughout the paper, it is sufficient to use the fact that the property of being an incidence graph of a graph  $G$  is expressible in MSO. To avoid complications in our proof we omit the details for this.

The *annotated version*  $\Pi^\alpha$  of a  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem  $\Pi$  is the parameterized graph problem whose instances are pairs of the form  $((G, Y), k)$  where  $(G, Y)$  is an annotated graph and  $k$  is a non-negative integer. In the *annotated version* of a  $p$ -MIN/EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem,  $S$  is additionally required to be a subset of  $Y$ . For the annotated version of a  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem  $S$  is not required to be a subset of  $Y$ , but instead of  $|S| \geq k$  we demand that  $|S \cap Y| \geq k$ . A problem is an *annotated  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem* if it is the annotated version of some  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem.

**Our results.** Our first result is the following theorem (the proofs of Theorems 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 are given in Section 4).

**Theorem 1.1.** *If  $\Pi$  is an  $r$ -coverable  $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  (respectively  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$ ) problem, then the annotated version  $\Pi^\alpha$  admits a quadratic (respectively cubic) kernel.*

Let us remark that, while a parameterized graph problem is a special case of its annotated version where all vertices are annotated, the existence of a polynomial kernel for the annotated version does not imply directly that the corresponding (non-annotated) parameterized graph problem admits a polynomial kernel. Indeed, a kernelization algorithm for an annotated parameterized graph problem  $\Pi^\alpha$  is a polynomial time algorithm that, given an input  $(G = (V, E), Y, k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$ , computes an equivalent instance  $(G' = (V', E'), Y', k')$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  such that  $\max\{|V'|, k'\} = k^{O(1)}$ . The point here is that even



when  $Y = V$ , we cannot guarantee that  $Y' = V'$ . However, there is a simple trick resolving this issue, given some additional complexity conditions. In particular, Theorem 1.1 can be used to prove the following.

**Theorem 1.2.** *If  $\Pi$  is an NP-hard  $r$ -coverable  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem and  $\Pi^\alpha$  is in NP, then  $\Pi$  admits a polynomial kernel.*

Theorems 1.1 and 1.2 provide polynomial kernels for a variety of parameterized graph problems. However, many parameterized graph problems in the literature are known to admit linear kernels on planar graphs. Our next theorem unifies and generalizes *all* known linear kernels for parameterized graph problems on surfaces. To this end we make use of the notion of having *Finite Integer Index* or, in short, FII. This term first appeared in the works of [17, 26] and is similar to the notion of *finite state* [1, 18, 24]. As the definition of the property of having FII is long, we defer it to Subsection 2.3. Our next result is the following.

**Theorem 1.3.** *If  $\Pi$  is an  $r$ -quasi-coverable parameterized graph problem that has FII, then  $\Pi$  admits a linear kernel.*

Our theorems are similar in spirit, yet they have a few differences. In particular, not every  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem has FII. For example, the INDEPENDENT DOMINATING SET problem is a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem, but it does not have FII. Also the class of parameterized graph problems that have FII does not have a syntactic characterization and hence it may take some more work to apply Theorem 1.3 than Theorem 1.1. On the other hand, Theorem 1.3 applies to  $r$ -quasi-coverable problems and yields linear kernels. That way, it unifies and implies results presented in [4, 5, 15, 16, 19, 41, 46, 47, 53, 59, 62] as a corollary.

At high level, the proofs of our theorems consist of combinatorial decomposition and algebraic reductions. The combinatorial part shows how a graph can be decomposed into pieces with specific properties, and the algebraic reductions part explains how these pieces can be reduced. The important tool in both parts is the notion of *protrusion*, i.e. a subset of vertices of a graph, inducing a graph of constant treewidth and separated from the remaining part of the graph by a constant number of vertices. In the algebraic reductions part of the proof, we show that sufficiently large protrusions can be replaced by equivalent protrusions of smaller size. For CMSO problems algebraic reduction step is much more technical and involved than for FII. Here we work with annotated problems and perform replacements in several stages.

In the combinatorial part, the result concerning quasi-coverable problems is roughly as follows. Suppose that after deleting  $k$  constant radius balls from a bounded-genus graph  $G$  the remaining part of  $G$  has constant treewidth. Then either  $G$  has a protrusion of sufficiently large size (and in this case we can apply protrusion reduction to reduce the instance), or  $G$  has  $O(k)$  vertices. The proof of this result is based on a new treewidth-obstruction lemma for graphs embedded on a surface of bounded genus, which

is interesting in its own right. More precisely the lemma states that if a graph of bounded genus has two vertices which are far apart (in the radial distance) and cannot be separated by a small separator, then the treewidth of the graph is large. Concerning coverable problems, we show that every bounded genus graph  $G$  whose vertices can be covered by  $k$  balls of constant radius admits a *protrusion decomposition*. A protrusion decomposition is a partition of the vertex set into  $O(k)$  sets, one of these sets is a set  $S$  of size  $O(k)$  and the other sets are protrusions separated from each other by  $S$ . Combined with protrusion replacement rules for CMSO problems, such a decomposition implies the existence of a polynomial kernel for every coverable CMSO problem.

The remaining part of this paper is organized as follows. In the next section (Section 2) we give a series of definitions on basic notions that are necessary to describe our results. In Section 3 we give a proof of a variant of the classical Courcelle’s Theorem which we use in the proofs of our results. In Section 4 we present our meta-algorithmic framework for kernelization and explain how our main results are derived from a series of algorithmic and combinatorial properties. The algorithmic properties are proved in Section 5 while our combinatorial results are proven in Section 6. Some criterion for proving that a problem in graphs has FII are given in Section 7 and in Section 8 we give an extended exposition of how our results can be applied to concrete problems. In Section 9, we conclude with some open problems and further research directions. At the end of the paper, we append a short compendium of problems for which linear or polynomial kernels are consequences of our results.

## 2 Definitions and Notations

In this section we give necessary definitions, set up notations and derive some preliminary results that we make use of in proving the main results of the paper.

### 2.1 Preliminaries

In this section we define some concepts that we use in the rest of this paper. Given a graph  $G = (V, E)$  we use the notation  $V(G)$  and  $E(G)$  for  $V$  and  $E$  respectively. Given a set  $S \subseteq V(G)$ , we define  $\partial_G(S)$  as the set of vertices in  $S$  that have a neighbor in  $V \setminus S$ . For a set  $S \subseteq V(G)$ , the *neighbourhood* of  $S$  in  $G$  is  $N_G(S) = \partial_G(V(G) \setminus S)$ . We also define the *closed neighborhood of  $S$  in  $G$*  as  $N_G[S] = S \cup \partial_G(V(G) \setminus S)$ . When it is clear from the context, we omit the subscripts.

Let  $G = (V, E)$  be a graph. A graph  $G' = (V', E')$  is a *subgraph* of  $G$  if  $V' \subseteq V$  and  $E' \subseteq E$ . The subgraph  $G'$  is called an *induced subgraph* of  $G$  if  $E' = \{\{u, v\} \in E \mid u, v \in V'\}$ . In this case,  $G'$  is also called the subgraph *induced by  $V'$*  and is denoted by  $G[V']$ . Given a graph  $G$  and a set  $S \subseteq V$ , we denote by  $G \setminus S$  the graph  $G[V \setminus S]$ . If  $S \subseteq E$ , we denote  $G \setminus S = (V, E \setminus S)$ . We also use the term  $(x, y)$ -path for a path in  $G$  that has  $x$  and  $y$  as endpoints.

Throughout this paper we use  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\mathbb{Z}^-$  for the sets of integers, non-negative and non-positive integers respectively. Finally, we use  $\mathbb{N}$  for the set of positive integers.

### 2.1.1 Parameterized algorithms and kernels

An instance of a parameterized problem consists of  $(x, k)$ , where  $k$  is called the parameter. Thus a parameterized problem  $\Pi$  is a subset of  $\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  for some finite alphabet  $\Sigma$  such that for all  $(x_1, k_1), (x_2, k_2) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  with  $k_1, k_2 < 0$  it holds that  $(x_1, k_1) \in \Pi \iff (x_2, k_2) \in \Pi$ . A central notion in parameterized complexity is *fixed parameter tractability*, which means, for a given instance  $(x, k)$ , solvability in time  $f(k) \cdot p(|x|)$ , where  $f$  is an arbitrary function of  $k$  and  $p$  is a polynomial in the input size. The notion of *kernelization* is formally defined as follows.

**Definition 2.1. [Kernelization]** *Let  $\Pi \subseteq \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  be a parameterized problem and  $g$  be a computable function. We say that  $\Pi$  admits a kernel of size  $g$  if there exists an algorithm  $\mathcal{K}$ , called kernelization algorithm, or, in short, a kernelization, that given  $(x, k) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+$ , outputs, in time polynomial in  $|x| + k$ , a pair  $(x', k') \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that*

- (a)  $(x, k) \in \Pi$  if and only if  $(x', k') \in \Pi$ , and
- (b)  $\max\{|x'|, k'\} \leq g(k)$ .

*For every  $(x, k) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^-$ , the algorithm outputs a trivial equivalent instance. When  $g(k) = k^{O(1)}$  or  $g(k) = O(k)$  then we say that  $\Pi$  admits a polynomial or linear kernel respectively.*

In this paper, we study parameterized problems on graphs. However, in many cases we have to deal with annotated graph problems whose input is a pair  $(G, S)$ , where  $S$  is a set of annotated vertices of  $G$ . For such problems the task is to find a solution that is contained in  $S$ . For this reason, we use the term *parameterized graph problem* for every subset  $\Pi$  of  $\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$ , where in each instance  $I = (x, k) \in \Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}$  the string  $x$  is encoding either a graph  $G = (V, E)$  or a pair  $(G, S)$  with  $S \subseteq V$  and the integer  $k$  encodes the parameter.

### 2.1.2 Tree-width

Let  $G = (V, E)$  be a graph. A *tree decomposition* of  $G$  is a pair  $(T, \mathcal{X} = \{X_t\}_{t \in V(T)})$  where  $T$  is a tree and  $\mathcal{X}$  is a collection of subsets of  $V$  such that:

- $\forall e = \{u, v\} \in E, \exists t \in V(T) : \{u, v\} \subseteq X_t$  and
- $\forall v \in V, T[\{t \mid v \in X_t\}]$  is non-empty and connected.

We call the vertices of  $T$  *nodes* and the sets in  $\mathcal{X}$  *bags* of the tree decomposition  $(T, \mathcal{X})$ . The *width* of  $(T, \mathcal{X})$  is equal to  $\max\{|X_t| - 1 \mid t \in V(T)\}$  and the *treewidth* of  $G = (V, E)$  is the minimum width over all tree decompositions of  $G$ . We denote the treewidth of a graph  $G$  by  $\mathbf{tw}(G)$ .

A *nice tree decomposition* is a triple  $(T, \mathcal{X}, r)$  where  $(T, \mathcal{X})$  is a tree decomposition where the tree  $T$  is rooted on some vertex  $r \in V(T)$  and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Every node of the tree  $T$  has at most two children;
- if a node  $t$  has two children  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , then  $X_t = X_{t_1} = X_{t_2}$  (we call  $t$  a *join node*); and
- if a node  $t$  has one child  $t_1$ , then either  $|X_t| = |X_{t_1}| + 1$  and  $X_{t_1} \subset X_t$  (in this case we call  $t_1$  *introduce node*) or  $|X_t| = |X_{t_1}| - 1$  and  $X_t \subset X_{t_1}$  (in this case we call  $t_1$  *forget node*).

It is possible to transform a given tree decomposition  $(T, \mathcal{X})$  into a nice tree decomposition  $(T', \mathcal{X}', r)$  where the root  $r$  is any vertex of  $T$  in time  $O(|V| + |E|)$  [10].

## 2.2 Boundaried Graphs

Here we define the notion of *boundaried graphs* and various operations on them.

**Definition 2.2. [Boundaried Graphs]** A *boundaried graph* is a graph  $G$  with a set  $B \subseteq V(G)$  of distinguished vertices and an injective labelling  $\lambda$  from  $B$  to the set  $\mathbb{Z}^+$ . The set  $B$  is called the *boundary* of  $G$  and the vertices in  $B$  are called *boundary vertices* or *terminals*. Given a boundaried graph  $G$ , we denote its boundary by  $\delta(G)$ , we denote its labelling by  $\lambda_G$ , and we define its label set by  $\Lambda(G) = \{\lambda_G(v) \mid v \in \delta(G)\}$ . Given a finite set  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , we define  $\mathcal{F}_I$  to denote the class of all boundaried graphs whose label set is  $I$ . Similarly, we define  $\mathcal{F}_{\subseteq I} = \bigcup_{I' \subseteq I} \mathcal{F}_{I'}$ . We also denote by  $\mathcal{F}$  the class of all boundaried graphs. Finally we say that a boundaried graph is a  $t$ -boundaried graph if  $\Lambda(G) \subseteq \{1, \dots, t\}$ .

**Definition 2.3. [Gluing by  $\oplus$ ]** Let  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  be two boundaried graphs. We denote by  $G_1 \oplus G_2$  the graph (not boundaried) obtained by taking the disjoint union of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  and identifying equally-labeled vertices of the boundaries of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ . In  $G_1 \oplus G_2$  there is an edge between two labeled vertices if there is either an edge between them in  $G_1$  or in  $G_2$ .

**Definition 2.4.** Let  $G = G_1 \oplus G_2$  where  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  are boundaried graphs. We define the *glued set* of  $G_i$  as the set  $B_i = \lambda_{G_i}^{-1}(\Lambda(G_1) \cap \Lambda(G_2))$ ,  $i = 1, 2$ . For a vertex  $v \in V(G_1)$  we define its *heir*  $h(v)$  in  $G$  as follows: if  $v \notin B_1$  then  $h(v) = v$ , otherwise  $h(v)$  is the result of the identification of  $v$  with an equally labeled vertex in  $G_2$ . The heir of a vertex

in  $G_2$  is defined symmetrically. The common boundary of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  in  $G$  is equal to  $h(B_1) = h(B_2)$  where the evaluation of  $h$  on vertex sets is defined in the obvious way. The heir of an edge  $\{u, v\} \in E(G_i)$  is the edge  $\{h(u), h(v)\}$  in  $G$ .

Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a class of (not boundaried) graphs. By slightly abusing notation we say that a boundaried graph *belongs to a graph class*  $\mathcal{G}$  if the underlying graph belongs to  $\mathcal{G}$ .

### 2.3 Finite Integer Index

**Definition 2.5.** [Canonical equivalence on boundaried graphs.] *Let  $\Pi$  be a parameterized graph problem whose instances are pairs of the form  $(G, k)$ . Given two boundaried graphs  $G_1, G_2 \in \mathcal{F}$ , we say that  $G_1 \equiv_{\Pi} G_2$  if  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$  and there exist a transposition constant  $c \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that*

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi.$$

Note that the relation  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  is an equivalence relation. Observe that  $c$  could be negative in the above definition. This is the reason we extended the definition of parameterized problems to include negative parameters also.

Next we define a notion of “transposition-minimality” for the members of each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ .

**Definition 2.6.** [Progressive representatives] *Let  $\Pi$  be a parameterized graph problem whose instances are pairs of the form  $(G, k)$  and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be some equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ . We say that  $J \in \mathcal{C}$  is a progressive representative of  $\mathcal{C}$  if for every  $H \in \mathcal{C}$  there exists  $c \in \mathbb{Z}^-$ , such that*

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (H \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (J \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi. \quad (1)$$

The following lemma guaranties the existence of a progressive representative for each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ .

**Lemma 2.7.** *Let  $\Pi$  be a parameterized graph problem whose instances are pairs of the form  $(G, k)$ . Then each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  has a progressive representative.*

*Proof.* We first examine the case where every instance of  $\Pi$  with a negative valued parameter is a NO-instance.

Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be an equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ . We distinguish two cases:

*Case 1.* Suppose first that for every  $H \in \mathcal{C}$ , every  $F \in \mathcal{F}$ , and every integer  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$  it holds that  $(H \oplus F, k) \notin \Pi$ . Then we set  $J$  to be an arbitrary chosen graph in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $c = 0$ . In this case, it is obvious that (1) holds for every  $(F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}$ .

*Case 2.* Suppose now that for some  $H_0 \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $F_0 \in \mathcal{F}$ , and  $k_0 \in \mathbb{Z}$  it holds that that  $(H_0 \oplus F_0, k_0) \in \Pi$ . Among all such triples, choose the one where the value of  $k_0$  is

minimized. Since every instance of  $\Pi$  with a negative valued parameter is a NO-instance, it follows that  $k_0$  is well defined and is non-negative. We claim that  $H_0$  is a progressive representative.

Let  $H \in \mathcal{C}$ . As  $H_0 \equiv_{\Pi} H$ , there is a constant  $c$  such that

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (H \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (H_0 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi.$$

It suffices to prove that  $c \leq 0$ . Assume for a contradiction that  $c > 0$ . Then, by taking  $k = k_0 - c$  and  $F = F_0$ , we have that

$$(H \oplus F_0, k_0 - c) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (H_0 \oplus F_0, k_0 - c + c) \in \Pi.$$

Since  $(H_0 \oplus F_0, k_0) \in \Pi$  it follows that  $(H \oplus F_0, k_0 - c) \in \Pi$  contradicting the choice of  $H_0, F_0, k_0$ .

Suppose now that every instance of  $\Pi$  with a negative valued parameter is a YES-instance. The proof of this case is symmetric to the previous one: just replace every occurrence of “ $\in \Pi$ ” with a “ $\notin \Pi$ ” and every occurrence of “ $\notin \Pi$ ” with “ $\in \Pi$ ” and the “NO-instance” with “YES-instance”.  $\square$

Notice that two boundaried graphs with different label sets belong to different equivalence classes of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ . Hence for every equivalence class  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  there exists some finite set  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that  $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{F}_I$ . We are now in position to give the following definition.

**Definition 2.8. [Finite Integer Index]** *A parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  whose instances are pairs of the form  $(G, k)$  has Finite Integer Index (or simply has FII), if and only if for every finite  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the number of equivalence classes of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  that are subsets of  $\mathcal{F}_I$  is finite. For each  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , we define  $\mathcal{S}_I$  to be a set containing exactly one progressive representative of each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  that is a subset of  $\mathcal{F}_I$ . We also define  $\mathcal{S}_{\subseteq I} = \bigcup_{I' \subseteq I} \mathcal{S}_{I'}$ .*

## 2.4 Structures and its properties

We first define the notions of *structure* and *arity of a structure*.

**Definition 2.9. [Structure and arity]** *A structure is a tuple where the first element of the tuple is a graph  $G$  and the remaining elements of the tuple are either subsets of  $V$ , subsets of  $E$ , vertices in  $G$  or edges in  $G$ . The arity of the structure is the number of elements in the tuple.*

Given a structure  $\alpha$  of arity  $p$  and an integer  $i \in \{1, \dots, p\}$  we let  $\alpha[i]$  denote the  $i$ 'th element of  $\alpha$ . The graph of a structure  $\alpha$  is denoted by  $G_{\alpha}$  and it appears as the first element of the structure, that is, it is  $\alpha[1]$ . *Appending* a subset  $S$  of  $V(G_{\alpha})$  to a structure  $\alpha$  of arity  $p$  produces a new structure, denoted by  $\alpha' = \alpha \diamond S$ , of arity  $p + 1$  with the first  $p$  elements of  $\alpha'$  being the elements of  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha'[p + 1] = S$ . Appending an

edge set, a vertex, or an edge to a structure is defined similarly. For example, consider the structure  $\alpha = (G_\alpha, S, e)$ , of arity 3 where  $S \subseteq V(G_\alpha)$  and  $e \in E(G_\alpha)$ . Let also  $S'$  be some subset of  $V(G_\alpha)$  and let  $u \in V(G_\alpha)$ . Appending  $S'$  to  $\alpha$  results to the structure  $\alpha' = \alpha \diamond S' = (G_\alpha, S, e, S')$ , while appending  $u$  to  $\alpha'$  results to the structure  $\alpha'' = \alpha' \diamond u = (G_\alpha, S, e, S', u)$ .

Next we define the notions of *type* of a structure and *property* of structures.

**Definition 2.10.** [**Type of structure**] *The type of a structure of arity  $p$  is another tuple of arity  $p$ , denoted by  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$ , where the first element  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[1]$  is **graph**, while for every  $i \in \{2, \dots, p\}$ ,  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[i]$  is **vertex**, **edge**, **vertex set** or **edge set** according to what the  $i$ 'th element of  $\alpha$  is. Note that we distinguish between a set containing a single vertex or edge from just a single vertex or edge.*

**Definition 2.11.** [**Properties of structures**] *A property of structures is a function  $\sigma$  that assigns to each structure a value in  $\{\mathbf{true}, \mathbf{false}\}$ .*

## 2.5 Counting Monadic Second Order Logic and its properties

The syntax of Monadic Second Order Logic (MSO) of graphs includes the logical connectives  $\vee, \wedge, \neg, \Leftrightarrow, \Rightarrow$ , variables for vertices, edges, sets of vertices, and sets of edges, the quantifiers  $\forall, \exists$  that can be applied to these variables, and the following five binary relations:

1.  $u \in U$  where  $u$  is a vertex variable and  $U$  is a vertex set variable;
2.  $d \in D$  where  $d$  is an edge variable and  $D$  is an edge set variable;
3.  $\mathbf{inc}(d, u)$ , where  $d$  is an edge variable,  $u$  is a vertex variable, and the interpretation is that the edge  $d$  is incident with the vertex  $u$ ;
4.  $\mathbf{adj}(u, v)$ , where  $u$  and  $v$  are vertex variables and the interpretation is that  $u$  and  $v$  are adjacent;
5. equality of variables representing vertices, edges, sets of vertices, and sets of edges.

In addition to the usual features of monadic second-order logic, if we have atomic sentences testing whether the cardinality of a set is equal to  $q$  modulo  $r$ , where  $q$  and  $r$  are integers such that  $0 \leq q < r$  and  $r \geq 2$ , then this extension of the MSO is called the *counting monadic second-order logic*. Thus CMSO is MSO with the following atomic sentence for a set  $S$ :

$$\mathbf{card}_{q,r}(S) = \mathbf{true} \text{ if and only if } |S| \equiv q \pmod{r}.$$

We refer to [8, 24, 23] for a detailed introduction on CMSO.

A CMSO sentence  $\psi$  where some of the variables are free can be evaluated on a structure  $\alpha$  by instantiating the free variables of  $\psi$  by the elements of  $\alpha$ . In order to

determine which variables of  $\psi$  are instantiated by which elements of  $\alpha$  we need to introduce some conventions.

In a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$ , each free variable  $x$  has a *rank*  $r_x \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{1\}$  associated to it. Thus a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  can be seen as a string accompanied by a tuple of integers containing one integer  $r_x$  for each free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$ .

We say that  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$  *matches*  $\psi$  if the arity of  $\alpha$  is at least  $\max r_x$ , where the maximum is taken over each free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$  and for each free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$ ,  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[r_x]$  corresponds to the kind of the variable  $x$ . For an example, if  $x$  is a vertex set variable, then  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[r_x] = \mathbf{vertex\ set}$ . Finally we say that  $\alpha$  *matches*  $\psi$  if  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$  matches  $\psi$ . For each free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$  and a structure  $\alpha$  that matches  $\psi$  the *corresponding element* of  $x$  in  $\alpha$  is  $\alpha[r_x]$ .

**Definition 2.12.** [**Property**  $\sigma_\psi$ ] *Each CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  defines a property  $\sigma_\psi$  on structures as follows: For every structure  $\alpha$  that does not match  $\psi$  the value of  $\sigma_\psi(\alpha)$  is equal to **false**, otherwise the value of  $\sigma_\psi(\alpha)$  is the result of the evaluation of  $\psi$  with each free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$  instantiated by  $\alpha[r_x]$ .*

Note that it is not necessary that every element of  $\alpha$  corresponds to some variable of  $\psi$ . However, it is still possible that the sentence  $\psi$  can be evaluated on the structure  $\alpha$  and, in this case, the evaluation of the sentence does not depend on all the elements of the structure.

A property  $\sigma$  is *CMSO-definable* if there exists a sentence  $\psi$  such that  $\sigma = \sigma_\psi$ . In this case we say that the CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  *defines*  $\sigma$ .

**Observation 1.** *For every CMSO-definable property  $\sigma$  there exists a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  that defines  $\sigma$  and has the following additional features.*

1. *Each variable of  $\psi$  has a unique name.*
2.  *$\psi$  does not use the **adj** operator,*
3.  *$\psi$  does not have conjunctions,*
4.  *$\psi$  does not have universal quantifiers.*

*Proof.* Let  $\psi'$  be a CMSO-sentence defining  $\sigma$ . We construct another CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  defining  $\sigma$  so that  $\psi$  satisfies Properties (1)–(4). For Property (1), we rename each variable so that it has a unique name. When we rename a free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$  of rank  $r_x$  to  $x'$  we let  $x'$  have rank  $r_{x'} = r_x$  in  $\psi'$ .

For Property (2), we replace each occurrence of  $\mathbf{adj}(x, x')$  by  $\exists x'' \in E : \mathbf{inc}(x'', x) \wedge \mathbf{inc}(x'', x')$ . For Properties (3) and (4), just use the fact that  $\wedge$  and  $\forall$  can be expressed using  $\vee$ ,  $\exists$ , and  $\neg$  by De Morgan's laws.  $\square$

We call CMSO-sentences satisfying Properties (1)–(4) of Observation 1 *normalized CMSO-sentences*.



## 2.6 Boundaried structures

In this subsection we extend the notion of boundaried graphs to boundaried structures.

**Definition 2.13.** [Boundaried structure] A boundaried structure is a tuple where the first element is a boundaried graph  $G$  and the remaining elements are either subsets of  $V(G)$ , subsets of  $E(G)$ , vertices in  $V(G)$ , edges in  $E(G)$ , or the symbol  $\star$ . For a boundaried structure  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha[i]$  is the  $i$ 'th element of  $\alpha$  and  $G_\alpha = \alpha[1]$  is always a boundaried graph.

**Definition 2.14.** [Type of a boundaried structure] The type of the boundaried structure is defined similarly to the type of a structure; for a boundaried structure  $\alpha$  of arity  $p$ ,  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$  is a tuple of arity  $p$ , where the first element of  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$  is boundaried graph, while for every  $i \in \{2, \dots, p\}$ ,  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[i]$  is vertex, edge,  $\star$ , vertex set, or edge set according to what  $\alpha[i]$  is.

**Definition 2.15.** [Type matching] Given a CMSO-formula  $\psi$ , we say that  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$  matches  $\psi$  if the arity of  $\alpha$  is at least  $\max r_x$ , where the maximum is taken over each free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$  and for every free variable  $x$  of  $\psi$

- if  $x$  is a vertex variable then  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[r_x] \in \{\star, \text{vertex}\}$
- if  $x$  is a edge variable then  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[r_x] \in \{\star, \text{edge}\}$
- if  $x$  is a vertex set variable then  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[r_x] = \text{vertex set}$
- if  $x$  is a edge set variable then  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[r_x] = \text{edge set}$

We say that  $\alpha$  matches  $\psi$  if  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$  matches  $\psi$ .

We denote by  $\mathcal{A}$  the set of all boundaried structures. Given some  $p \in \mathbb{N}$ , we denote by  $\mathcal{A}^p$  the set of all boundaried structures of arity  $p$  and given a finite set  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$  we denote by  $\mathcal{A}_I^p$  the set of all boundaried structures of arity  $p$  whose boundaried graph has label set  $I$ . Notice that according to this definition,  $\mathcal{A}_I^1$  is essentially the same as  $\mathcal{F}_I$ . Finally, we say that a boundaried structure  $\alpha$  is a  $t$ -boundaried structure if  $\Lambda(G_\alpha) \subseteq \{1, \dots, t\}$ .

**Definition 2.16.** [Compatibility] For two boundaried structures  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  we say that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are compatible, we denote this by  $\alpha \sim_c \beta$ , if the following conditions are satisfied.

- $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  have the same arity  $p$ .
- For every  $i \leq p$ ,  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[i] = \mathbf{type}(\beta)[i] \neq \star$  or exactly one out of  $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)[i]$ ,  $\mathbf{type}(\beta)[i]$  is a vertex or edge and exactly one of them is a  $\star$ .
- For every  $i \in \{2, \dots, p\}$  such that both  $\alpha[i]$  and  $\beta[i]$  are vertices,  $\alpha[i] \in \delta(G_\alpha)$ ,  $\beta[i] \in \delta(G_\beta)$  and  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[i]) = \lambda_{G_\beta}(\beta[i])$ .

- For every  $i$  such that both  $\alpha[i]$  and  $\beta[i]$  are edges,  $\alpha[i] \in E(G_\alpha[\delta(G_\alpha)])$ ,  $\beta[i] \in E(G_\beta[\delta(G_\beta)])$  and  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[i]) = \lambda_{G_\beta}(\beta[i])$  (here we extend the function  $\lambda$  to sets in the obvious way).

**Definition 2.17. [Gluing of boundaried compatible structures]** When two boundaried structures  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are compatible, the operation of gluing  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  is defined as follows.

- $\alpha \oplus \beta$  is a structure  $\gamma$  with the same arity, say  $p$ , as  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .
- $G_\gamma = G_\alpha \oplus G_\beta$ .
- For every  $i \in \{2, \dots, p\}$  such that both  $\alpha[i]$  and  $\beta[i]$  are both vertex sets or both edge sets, we define  $\gamma[i] = h(\alpha[i]) \cup h(\beta[i])$ .
- For every  $i \in \{2, \dots, p\}$  such that both  $\alpha[i]$  and  $\beta[i]$  are vertices or both are edges we have  $h(\alpha[i]) = h(\beta[i])$  (by compatibility) and we set  $\gamma[i] = h(\alpha[i]) = h(\beta[i])$ . If  $\alpha[i] = \star$  we set  $\gamma[i] = h(\beta[i])$  whereas if  $\beta[i] = \star$  we set  $\gamma[i] = h(\alpha[i])$ . By compatibility, exactly one of these cases apply for every  $i$ .

### 3 A variant of Courcelle's Theorem

In this subsection we give a proof of a variant of the classical Courcelle's Theorem [24, 22, 23], which we use in the proofs of our results.

We define the *compatibility equivalence* relation  $\equiv_c$  on boundaried structures as follows. We say that  $\alpha \equiv_c \beta$  if for every boundaried structure  $\gamma$ ,

$$\alpha \sim_c \gamma \iff \beta \sim_c \gamma.$$

Clearly  $\equiv_c$  is an equivalence relation. We now make the following observation.

**Observation 2.** For every arity  $p$  and finite set  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the relation  $\equiv_c$  has a finite number of equivalence classes when restricted to  $\mathcal{A}_I^p$ .

*Proof.* Define the *compatibility signature* of a boundaried structure  $\alpha$  to be a string  $\mathbf{s}(\alpha)$  that encodes the following information about  $\alpha$ :

- $\Lambda(G_\alpha)$
- $\mathbf{type}(\alpha)$ .
- For every  $i$  such that  $\alpha[i]$  is a vertex,  $\mathbf{s}(\alpha)$  encodes whether  $\alpha[i] \in \delta(G_\alpha)$ , and if so, it encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[i])$ .
- For every  $i$  such that  $\alpha[i]$  is an edge,  $\mathbf{s}(\alpha)$  encodes whether  $\alpha[i] \in E(G_\alpha[\delta(G_\alpha)])$ , and if so, it also encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[i])$ .

Clearly, for every fixed  $I$  and  $p$ , the compatibility signature  $\mathbf{s}(\alpha)$  can be encoded by a number of bits that depends only on  $I$  and  $p$  and hence there are only finitely many different compatibility signatures for boundaried structures in  $\mathcal{A}_I^p$ . It is easy to verify that whether a boundaried structure  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$  is compatible with a boundaried structure  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$  can be deduced solely from  $\gamma$  and the compatibility signature of  $\alpha$ . Thus, if two boundaried structures  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  have the same compatibility signatures then  $\alpha \equiv_c \beta$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

**Definition 3.1.** [Canonical equivalence on structures.] *For a property  $\sigma$  of structures, we define the corresponding canonical equivalence relation  $\equiv_\sigma$  on boundaried structures. For two boundaried structures  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  we say  $\alpha \equiv_\sigma \beta$  if  $\alpha \equiv_c \beta$  and for all boundaried structures  $\gamma$  compatible to  $\alpha$  (and thus also to  $\beta$ ), we have*

$$\sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true} \Leftrightarrow \sigma(\beta \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}.$$

It is easy to verify that  $\equiv_\sigma$  is an equivalence relation. We say that a property  $\sigma$  of structures is *finite state* if, for every  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the equivalence relation  $\equiv_\sigma$  has a finite number of equivalence classes when restricted to  $\mathcal{A}_I^p$ . Given a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$ , we say that  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  is the *canonical equivalence relation* corresponding to  $\psi$  and we simply denote this relation by  $\equiv_\psi$ .

In our arguments, the following lemma will be crucial. While it is an implicit consequence of the results [8, 24, 23, 22, 1, 18, 27], in the rest of this section, we give a complete and self-contained proof.

**Lemma 3.2.** *Every CMSO-definable property on structures has finite state.*

*Proof.* Our aim is to prove that for every  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  and finite  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , and CMSO-definable property  $\sigma$ , the equivalence relation  $\equiv_\sigma$  has a finite number of equivalence classes when restricted to  $\mathcal{A}_I^p$ . For this we will define, for every normalized CMSO-sentence  $\psi$ , a function  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  that takes as input a boundaried structure and outputs a string in  $\{0, 1\}^*$ . To prove the result it suffices to show the following two properties of the function  $\text{sgn}_\psi$ :

- (i) for all  $p \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $J \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the set  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\mathcal{A}_J^p)$  is finite.
- (ii) for every two boundaried structures  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , if  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha) = \text{sgn}_\psi(\beta)$  then  $\alpha \equiv_\sigma \beta$ .

We need the following claim:

*Decoder Claim:* In order to prove Property (ii), it is enough to prove that for every CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  defining a property  $\sigma$ , there exist two functions

$$\begin{aligned} \text{dec}_c : \{0, 1\}^* \times \mathcal{A}^p &\rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\} \\ \text{dec}_\psi : \{0, 1\}^* \times \mathcal{A}^p &\rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\} \end{aligned}$$

such that for every pair  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$  and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$  we have that

$$\text{dec}_c(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true} \iff \alpha \sim_c \gamma. \quad (2)$$

and for every pair  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$  and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$  with  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$  it holds that

$$\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true} \iff \sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}. \quad (3)$$

*Proof of Decoder Claim:* For the proof of the above claim, assume that for some  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$ , it holds that

$$\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha) = \text{sgn}_\psi(\beta). \quad (4)$$

Then for all  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$ , it holds that

$$\alpha \sim_c \gamma \Leftrightarrow^{(2)} \text{dec}_c(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true} \Leftrightarrow^{(4)} \text{dec}_c(\text{sgn}_\psi(\beta), \gamma) = \text{true} \Leftrightarrow^{(2)} \beta \sim_c \gamma,$$

hence  $\alpha \equiv_c \beta$ . Further, for all  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$  such that  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$  it holds that

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true} &\Leftrightarrow^{(3)} \text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true} \\ &\Leftrightarrow^{(4)} \text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\beta), \gamma) = \text{true} \\ &\Leftrightarrow^{(3)} \sigma(\beta \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}, \end{aligned}$$

and thus  $\alpha \equiv_\sigma \beta$ , as required. This completes the proof of the decoder claim.

We start by partially defining the outputs of  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  as follows. If  $\alpha$  does not match  $\psi$  then  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  is the null string, denoted by  $\epsilon$ , otherwise,  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  encodes the compatibility signature of  $\alpha$  (as defined in the proof of Observation 2) and additional information about  $\alpha$  that will be specified later in the proof.

The existence of a function  $\text{dec}_c$  satisfying (2) follows directly from the proof of Observation 2.

We define the function  $\text{dec}_\psi$  such that  $\text{dec}_\psi(\epsilon, \gamma) = \text{false}$  for every boundaried structure  $\gamma$ . Also  $\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{false}$  whenever  $\text{type}(\alpha \oplus \gamma)$  does not match  $\psi$ . Observe that this can be checked using the compatibility signature of  $\alpha$  (that is already encoded in  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$ ) and  $\gamma$ . Thus  $\text{dec}_\psi$  satisfies (3) for all pairs  $\alpha, \gamma$  such that  $\alpha \oplus \gamma$  does not match  $\psi$ .

In the remainder of the proof, we will complete the definition of  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  and we will define  $\text{dec}_\psi$  for all pairs  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma$  such that  $\alpha \oplus \gamma$  match  $\psi$ . This should be done in a way such that (i) holds for  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  and (3) holds for  $\text{dec}_\psi$ .

We now define  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  and  $\text{dec}_\psi$  and prove that they have the claimed properties for the case where  $\alpha$  matches  $\psi$  and  $\psi$  is an atomic CMSO-sentence. An atomic CMSO-sentence is a sentence of the form “ $u \in S$ ”, “ $e \in S$ ”, “ $u = v$ ”, “ $e = d$ ”, “ $\text{inc}(d, u)$ ”, or “ $\text{card}_{q,r}(S)$ ” where  $S$  is a set variable,  $u$  and  $v$  are vertex variables,  $e$  and  $d$  are edge variables and  $r \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{1\}$  and  $q \in \{0, \dots, r-1\}$ . In this case, we append to  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  certain information about  $\alpha$  that

- (i) encodes  $G[\delta(G_\alpha)]$ ,
- (ii) encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}$ ,
- (iii) for every vertex variable  $x$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] = \star$  or not (recall that  $r_x$  is the rank of  $x$ ). If  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star$ , then  $\mathbf{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] \in \delta(G_\alpha)$  and, if this is the case, also encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x])$ ,
- (iv) for every edge variable  $x$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] = \star$  or not. If  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star$ ,  $\mathbf{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  also encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] \subseteq \delta(G_\alpha)$  and if this is the case, also encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x])$ ,
- (v) for every vertex set variable  $x$ , encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x] \cap \delta(G_\alpha))$ ,
- (vi) for every edge set variable  $x$ , encodes  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x] \cap E(\delta(G_\alpha)))$  (here  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}$  is extended to sets of unordered pairs in the natural way),
- (vii) for every vertex variable  $x$  such that  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star$  and every vertex set variable  $x'$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] \in \alpha[r_{x'}]$ .
- (viii) for every edge variable  $x$  such that  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star$  and every edge set variable  $x'$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] \in \alpha[r_{x'}]$ .
- (ix) for every pair of vertex variables  $x, x'$  where  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star \neq \alpha[r_{x'}]$ , encodes whether  $\{\alpha[r_x], \alpha[r_{x'}]\} \in E(G_\alpha)$ ,
- (x) for every vertex variable  $x$  and every edge variable  $x'$ , where  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star \neq \alpha[r_{x'}]$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] \in \alpha[r_{x'}]$  (i.e, whether  $\alpha[r_{x'}]$  is incident to  $\alpha[r_x]$ ),
- (xi) if  $\psi$  is “**card** $_{q,r}(x)$ ” where  $x$  is either a vertex set or an edge set variable, encodes  $|\alpha[r_x]| \pmod r$ ,
- (xii) for every pair of vertex variables  $x, x'$  where  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star \neq \alpha[r_{x'}]$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] = \alpha[r_{x'}]$ ,
- (xiii) for every pair of edge variables  $x, x'$  where  $\alpha[r_x] \neq \star \neq \alpha[r_{x'}]$ , encodes whether  $\alpha[r_x] = \alpha[r_{x'}]$ ,

To see that  $\mathbf{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  satisfies Property (i), it is enough to verify that, for every  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$ , the length of  $\mathbf{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  is upper bounded by a function depending only the atomic formula  $\psi$ , the integer  $p$ , and the set  $I$ .

We now define  $\mathbf{dec}_\psi(\mathbf{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma)$  for the case where  $\psi$  is an atomic CMSO-formula and  $\alpha \oplus \gamma$  matches  $\psi$  and prove that  $\mathbf{dec}_\psi$  satisfies (3) for this case. For this, we distinguish cases depending on the kind of  $\psi$ . During our case analysis, we use quotes “ ” in order to delimit the string that corresponds to a formula and we use the symbol  $\circ$  to denote the concatenation operation between strings. For example, if  $\psi = “\exists x \forall y \neg \phi(x, y)”$ , then  $\psi = “\exists x \forall y” \circ “\neg \phi(x, y)”$ .

We give a detailed proof in the case where  $\psi = “x \in x’”$ . We also provide a brief description of the proofs for the remaining cases that can all be formalized in a similar fashion.

*Case 1:*  $\psi = “x \in x’”$  where  $x$  is a vertex variable and  $x’$  is a vertex set variable. Then  $\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma)$  is computed by the procedure in Table 3:

<pre> <b>if</b> <math>\alpha[r_x] \neq \star</math>      (<i>using the compatibility signature of <math>\alpha</math></i>)   <b>then if</b> <math>\alpha[r_x] \in \alpha[r_{x’}]</math>      (<i>using (vii)</i>)     <b>then return true</b>     <b>else if</b> <math>\alpha[r_x] \in \delta(G_\alpha)</math>      (<i>using (iii)</i>)       <b>then if</b> <math>\lambda_{G_\gamma}^{-1}(\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x])) \in \gamma[r_{x’}]</math>      (<i>using (iii)</i>)         <b>then return true</b>         <b>else return false</b>       <b>else return false</b>     <b>else if</b> <math>\gamma[r_x] \in \gamma[r_{x’}]</math>      (<i>notice that <math>\gamma[r_x] \neq \star</math>, since <math>\alpha \sim_c \gamma</math></i>)       <b>then return true</b>       <b>else if</b> <math>\gamma[r_x] \in \delta(G_\gamma)</math>         <b>then if</b> <math>\lambda_{G_\alpha}^{-1}(\lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_x])) \in \alpha[r_{x’}]</math>      (<i>using (iii) and (v)</i>)           <b>then return true</b>           <b>else return false</b>         <b>else return false</b> </pre>
--

Table 1: The procedure of the Case 1 in the proof of Lemma 3.2.

It can be easily verified that the above procedure outputs **true** if and only if  $(\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_x] \in (\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_{x’}]$  that is, if and only if  $\sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}$ . Furthermore, every query of the above procedure can be answered by inspecting  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  and  $\gamma$ . The numbers in the parentheses in the above procedure correspond to the items of the encoding of  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  that are used to answer each query about  $\alpha$ . This completes the proof of Case 1.

*Case 2:*  $\psi = “x \in x’”$  where  $x$  is an edge variable and  $x’$  is a edge set variable. Here the function  $\text{dec}_\psi$  should decide whether  $\sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma)$  is true which, in this case, is the same as asking whether  $(\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_x] \in (\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_{x’}]$  is true. This last question is equivalent to asking whether one of the following holds

$$\alpha[r_x] \in \alpha[r_{x’}] \tag{5}$$

$$\gamma[r_x] \in \gamma[r_{x’}] \tag{6}$$

$$\alpha[r_x] \in E(G_\alpha[\delta(G_\alpha)]) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x]) \in \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_{x’}] \cap E(G_\gamma[\delta(G_\gamma)])) \tag{7}$$

$$\gamma[r_x] \in E(G_\gamma[\delta(G_\gamma)]) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_x]) \in \lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_{x’}] \cap E(G_\alpha[\delta(G_\alpha)])) \tag{8}$$

Each query in (5)–(8) can be answered given  $\gamma$  and  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  (but no access to  $\alpha$  itself).

*Case 3:*  $\psi = "x = x'"$  where both  $x$  and  $x'$  are vertex variables. Here the function  $\text{dec}_\psi$  should decide whether  $\sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma)$  is true which, in this case, is the same as asking whether  $(\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_x] = (\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_{x'}]$  is true. This last question is equivalent to asking whether one of the following holds

$$\alpha[r_x] = \alpha[r_{x'}] \neq \star \quad (9)$$

$$\gamma[r_x] = \gamma[r_{x'}] \neq \star \quad (10)$$

$$\alpha[r_x] \in \delta_{G_\alpha} \text{ and } \gamma[r_{x'}] \in \delta_{G_\gamma} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x]) = \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_{x'}]) \quad (11)$$

$$\alpha[r_{x'}] \in \delta_{G_\alpha} \text{ and } \gamma[r_x] \in \delta_{G_\gamma} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_{x'}]) = \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_x]). \quad (12)$$

The above is correct because  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$  implies that at most one of  $\alpha[r_x]$  and  $\gamma[r_x]$  is a  $\star$  and, whenever neither of them are  $\star$ 's, it holds that  $\alpha[r_x] \in \delta_{G_\alpha}$ ,  $\gamma[r_x] \in \delta_{G_\gamma}$ , and  $\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x]) = \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_x])$  and the same holds for  $\alpha[r_{x'}]$  and  $\gamma[r_{x'}]$ . Again, each query in (9)–(12) can be answered given  $\gamma$  and  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$ .

*Case 4:*  $\psi = "x = x'"$  where both  $x$  and  $x'$  are edge variables. This case is very similar to the Case 3 and is omitted.

*Case 5:*  $\psi = "\text{inc}(x, x)"$  where  $x$  is an edge variable and  $x'$  is a vertex variable. Again, here the function  $\text{dec}_\psi$  should decide whether  $\sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma)$  is true and this is equivalent to  $(\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_{x'}] \subseteq (\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_x]$ . This last question is equivalent to asking whether one of the following holds

$$\star \neq \alpha[r_{x'}] \subseteq \alpha[r_x] \quad (13)$$

$$\star \neq \gamma[r_{x'}] \subseteq \gamma[r_x] \quad (14)$$

$$\alpha[r_{x'}] \in \delta(G_\alpha) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_{x'}]) \in \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_x]) \quad (15)$$

$$\gamma[r_{x'}] \in \delta(G_\gamma) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_{x'}]) \in \lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x]) \quad (16)$$

As in Case 3, the above is correct because of the fact that  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$  and it is enough to verify that each query in (13)–(16) can be answered given  $\gamma$  and  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$ .

*Case 6:*  $\psi = "\text{card}_{q,r}(x)"$  where  $x$  is a vertex set variable. The function  $\text{dec}_\psi$  should decide whether  $\sigma(\alpha \oplus \gamma)$  is true which in this case means that

$$|(\alpha \oplus \gamma)[r_x]| \equiv q \pmod{r}.$$

This, in turn, is equivalent to

$$|\alpha[r_x]| + |\gamma[r_x]| - |\lambda_{G_\alpha}(\alpha[r_x] \cap \delta(G_\alpha)) \cap \lambda_{G_\gamma}(\gamma[r_x] \cap \delta(G_\gamma))| \equiv q \pmod{r} \quad (17)$$

It is easy to see that (17) can be evaluated given  $\gamma$  and  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$ . This proves Property (ii), therefore the statement of the lemma holds when  $\psi$  is an atomic sentence.

To complete the proof we now complete the definition of  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  for every non-atomic normalized CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  and we will define  $\text{dec}_\psi$  for all pairs  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$ ,  $\gamma$  such that

$\alpha \oplus \gamma$  match  $\psi$ . As in the case of atomic formulas, this should be done in a way such that (i) holds for  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  and (3) holds for  $\text{dec}_\psi$ .

By using induction, we assume that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}$  and  $\text{dec}_{\psi'}$  have been defined such that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}$  satisfies Property (i) and  $\text{dec}_{\psi'}$  satisfies (3) for every normalized CMSO-sentence  $\psi'$  and has length smaller than  $\psi$ . This, together with the decoder claim implies Property (ii) for  $\psi'$ , namely that

$$\forall \alpha', \beta' \in \mathcal{A} \quad \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha') = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\beta') \Rightarrow \alpha' \equiv_{\psi'} \beta'. \quad (18)$$

One of the following cases applies:

*Case 1.*  $\psi = \neg \circ \psi'$ , where both  $\psi$  and  $\psi'$  have the same free variables whose rank is the same in  $\psi$  and  $\psi'$ . From the induction hypothesis, we know that there exist  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}$  and  $\text{dec}_{\psi'}$  such that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}$  satisfies Property (i) and  $\text{dec}_{\psi'}$  satisfies (3). We define

$$\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha) = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha) \quad (19)$$

We also define

$$\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \neg \text{dec}_{\psi'}(\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha), \gamma) \quad (20)$$

Notice that, in (20),  $\text{dec}_\psi$  is indeed a function of  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  and  $\gamma$  because of the definition of  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  in (19). By induction hypothesis, for every  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\mathcal{A}_I^p) = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\mathcal{A}_I^p)$  is finite, yielding that  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  satisfies Property (i).

To prove that  $\text{dec}_\psi$  satisfies (3), let  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$  and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$  with  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$ . Then

$$\sigma_\psi(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \neg \sigma_{\psi'}(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \neg \text{dec}_{\psi'}(\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha)) \stackrel{(20)}{=} \text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma)$$

where the second equation holds because of the induction hypothesis.

*Case 2.*  $\psi = \psi_1 \circ \vee \circ \psi_2$  where  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$  have the same free variables and the free variables have the same rank in  $\psi$ ,  $\psi_1$ , and  $\psi_2$ . From the induction hypothesis, we know that there exist  $\text{sgn}_{\psi_1}$ ,  $\text{sgn}_{\psi_2}$ ,  $\text{dec}_{\psi_1}$ , and  $\text{dec}_{\psi_2}$  such that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi_1}$  and  $\text{sgn}_{\psi_2}$  both satisfy Property (i) while  $\text{dec}_{\psi_1}$  and  $\text{dec}_{\psi_2}$  both satisfy (3).

We define

$$\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha) = \text{encode}(\text{sgn}_{\psi_1}(\alpha), \text{sgn}_{\psi_2}(\alpha)) \quad (21)$$

where  $\text{encode}$  is a function that receives two strings and encodes them as a single string. We also define two functions  $\text{decode}_1$  and  $\text{decode}_2$  such that

$$\text{decode}_i(\text{encode}(s_1, s_2)) = s_i, \text{ for } i \in \{1, 2\}.$$

We now define

$$\begin{aligned} \text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) &= \text{dec}_{\psi_1}(\text{decode}_1(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)), \gamma) \\ &\quad \vee \text{dec}_{\psi_2}(\text{decode}_2(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)), \gamma) \end{aligned}$$



From (21), we have that for every  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,

$$\text{sgn}_\psi(\mathcal{A}_I^p) \subseteq \text{encode}(\text{sgn}_{\psi_1}(\mathcal{A}_I^p), \text{sgn}_{\psi_2}(\mathcal{A}_I^p)) \cup \{\epsilon\} \quad (22)$$

By the induction hypothesis,  $\text{sgn}_{\psi_i}(\mathcal{A}_I^p)$  is finite, for  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ . This, together with (22), implies that  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  satisfies Property (i).

To prove that  $\text{dec}_\psi$  satisfies (3), observe that for all  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p, \gamma \in \mathcal{A}^p$  such that  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_\psi(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true} &\iff (\sigma_{\psi_1}(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}) \bigvee (\sigma_{\psi_2}(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}) \\ &\iff (\text{dec}_{\psi_1}(\text{sgn}_{\psi_1}(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true}) \bigvee (\text{dec}_{\psi_2}(\text{sgn}_{\psi_2}(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true}) \\ &\iff (\text{dec}_{\psi_1}(\text{decode}_1(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)), \gamma) = \text{true}) \\ &\quad \bigvee (\text{dec}_{\psi_2}(\text{decode}_2(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)), \gamma) = \text{true}) \\ &\iff \text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true}. \end{aligned}$$

The first equivalence holds because of the definition of  $\psi$ , the second by the induction hypothesis, the third by the definition of  $\text{decode}_i$ , and the last one by the definition of  $\text{dec}_\psi$ .

*Case 3.*  $\psi = “\exists x \subseteq V(G)” \circ \psi'$ , where  $\psi$  has  $p$  free variables and  $\psi'$  has  $p+1$  free variables, the ranks of the free variables of  $\psi$  and  $\psi'$  are the same, except for the variable  $x$  which is a free variable in  $\psi'$  but is not free in  $\psi$  and the rank of  $x$  in  $\psi'$  is  $p+1$ . From the induction hypothesis, we know that there exist  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}$  and  $\text{dec}_{\psi'}$  such that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}$  satisfies Property (i) and  $\text{dec}_{\psi'}$  satisfies (3). We define

$$\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha) = \text{encode}(\{\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha \diamond x) \mid x \subseteq V(G_\alpha)\}) \quad (23)$$

where, given a set  $\mathcal{W}$  of signatures the string  $\text{encode}(\mathcal{W})$  encodes all members of  $\mathcal{W}$ . We also define the function  $\text{decode}$  that receives as an entry a string  $\mathbf{s}$  and outputs the set of strings that are encoded to it, in particular  $\text{decode}(\text{encode}(\mathcal{W})) = \mathcal{W}$ . We now define

$$\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \bigvee_{\substack{\mathbf{s} \in \text{decode}(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)) \\ y \subseteq V(G_\gamma) \\ \text{such that } \text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \sim_c (\gamma \diamond y)}} \sigma_{\psi'}(\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y)) \quad (24)$$

where, given a string  $\mathbf{s}$  encoding a signature,  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s})$  returns the lexicographically smallest boundaried structure  $\alpha^*$  such that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha^*) = \mathbf{s}$ . First observe that the function  $\text{dec}_\psi$  is indeed a function of  $\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)$  and  $\gamma$ . By the construction of  $\text{sgn}_\psi$ , for all  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  and every finite  $I \subseteq \mathbb{N}$ , it holds that

$$\text{sgn}_\psi(\mathcal{A}_I^p) \in \text{encode}(2^{\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\mathcal{A}_I^{p+1})}) \cup \{\epsilon\}$$

which proves that  $\text{sgn}_\psi$  satisfies Property (i) (given a set  $X$  we denote by  $2^X$  the set of all its subsets). It remains to prove that  $\text{dec}_\psi$  satisfies (3), namely that for all  $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_I^p$

and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{A}_I$  such that  $\alpha \sim_c \gamma$ , the following hold

$$\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true} \Rightarrow \sigma_\psi(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true} \quad (25)$$

$$\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true} \Leftarrow \sigma_\psi(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true} \quad (26)$$

To prove (25), assume that  $\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true}$ . Thus there exist some  $y \subseteq V(G_\gamma)$  and  $\mathbf{s} \in \text{decode}(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha))$  such that  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \sim_c (\gamma \diamond y)$  and

$$\sigma_{\psi'}(\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y)) = \text{true}. \quad (27)$$

As  $\text{decode}(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha)) = \{\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha \diamond x) \mid x \subseteq V(G_\alpha)\}$ , we may select an  $x \subseteq V(G_\alpha)$  such that  $\mathbf{s} = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha \diamond x)$ . Therefore, the construction of  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}$  ensures that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s})) = \mathbf{s} = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha \diamond x)$ . From (18),  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \equiv_{\psi'} \alpha \diamond x$ . This means that  $(\alpha \diamond x) \sim_c (\gamma \diamond y)$ ,  $\sigma_{\psi'}(\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y)) = \sigma_{\psi'}((\alpha \diamond x) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y))$ , and, from (27), it follows that

$$\sigma_{\psi'}((\alpha \diamond x) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y)) = \text{true}.$$

Recall that  $(\alpha \diamond x) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y) = (\alpha \oplus \gamma) \diamond (x \cup y)$ , therefore

$$\sigma_{\psi'}((\alpha \oplus \gamma) \diamond (x \cup y)) = \text{true}.$$

which, by the definition of  $\psi$ , implies that  $\sigma_\psi(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}$  and (25) follows.

It now remains to prove (26). Assume that the value of  $\sigma_\psi(\alpha \oplus \gamma) = \text{true}$ . Thus, by the definition of  $\psi$ , there exist some  $x \subseteq V(G_\alpha)$  and some  $y \subseteq V(G_\gamma)$  such that  $(\alpha \diamond x) \sim_c (\gamma \diamond y)$  and

$$\sigma_{\psi'}((\alpha \diamond x) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y)) = \text{true} \quad (28)$$

Let  $\mathbf{s} = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha \diamond x)$  and observe, by (23), that  $\mathbf{s} \in \text{decode}(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha))$ . By the definition of  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}$  we have that  $\text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s})) = \text{sgn}_{\psi'}(\alpha \diamond x) = \mathbf{s}$ . By (18),  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \equiv_{\psi'} \alpha \diamond x$ . Hence, from (28), we obtain that  $\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \sim_c (\gamma \diamond y)$  and

$$\sigma_{\psi'}(\text{invsgn}_{\psi'}(\mathbf{s}) \oplus (\gamma \diamond y)) = \text{true}.$$

Notice that  $\mathbf{s}$  and  $y$  certify, in (24), that  $\text{dec}_\psi(\text{sgn}_\psi(\alpha), \gamma) = \text{true}$ , yielding (26).

*(Multi) case 4.*  $\psi = \text{"}\exists x \subseteq E(G)\text{"} \circ \psi'$  or  $\psi = \text{"}\exists x \in V(G)\text{"} \circ \psi'$  or  $\psi = \text{"}\exists x \in E(G)\text{"} \circ \psi'$ . The proof of the first case is the same as the proof of Case 3. The proof for the remaining two cases differs from the proof of Case 3 only in that when the variables of  $x$  and  $y$  in the proof are quantified as vertices or edges of the vertex or edge set respectively of a bounded structure, they may also take the value  $\star$ .

As the above case analysis is complete, the proof follows.  $\square$

## 4 Derivation of our results

In this section we give two master theorems from which all our results will be derived. We start with fundamental notions of our paper. These are the notions of *protrusion*, *protrusion replacement*, and *protrusion decomposition*.

**Definition 4.1.** [*t*-protrusion] *Given a graph  $G$ , we say that a set  $X \subseteq V$  is an  $t$ -protrusion of  $G$  if  $|\partial(X)| \leq t$  and  $\mathbf{tw}(G[X]) \leq t$ .*

**Definition 4.2.** [*(f, a)*-protrusion replacement family] *Let  $\Pi$  be a parameterized graph problem, let  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  be a non-decreasing function and let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . An  $(f, a)$ -protrusion replacement family for  $\Pi$  is a collection  $\mathcal{A} = \{A_i \mid i \geq 0\}$  of algorithms, such that algorithm  $A_i$  receives as input a pair  $(I, X)$ , where*

- *$I$  is an instance of  $\Pi$  whose graph and parameter are  $G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,*
- *$X$  is an  $i$ -protrusion of  $G$  with at least  $f(i) \cdot k^a$  vertices,*

*and outputs an equivalent instance  $I^*$  such that, if  $G^*$  and  $k^*$  are the graph and the parameter of  $I^*$ , then  $|V(G^*)| < |V(G)|$  and  $k^* \leq k$ . The running time of a  $(f, a)$ -protrusion replacement family is the running time of  $A_i$ .*

**Definition 4.3.** [ $(\alpha, \beta)$ -Protrusion decomposition] *An  $(\alpha, \beta)$ -protrusion decomposition of a graph  $G$  is a partition  $\mathcal{P} = \{R_0, R_1, \dots, R_\rho\}$  of  $V(G)$  such that*

- $\max\{\rho, |R_0|\} \leq \alpha$ ,
- *each  $R_i^+ = N_G[R_i]$ ,  $i \in \{1, \dots, \rho\}$ , is a  $\beta$ -protrusion of  $G$ , and*
- *for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, \rho\}$ ,  $N_G(R_i) \subseteq R_0$ .*

*We call the sets  $R_i^+$ ,  $i \in \{1, \dots, \rho\}$ , the protrusions of  $\mathcal{P}$ .*

### 4.1 Meta-algorithmic properties

We define the following two properties for a parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$ .

- A [Protrusion replacement:]** There exists an  $(f, a)$ -protrusion replacement family  $\mathcal{A}$  for  $\Pi$ , for some function  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  and some  $a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .
- B [Protrusion decomposition:]** There exists a constant  $c$  such that, if  $G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  are the graph and the parameter of a YES-instance of  $\Pi$  then  $G$  admits a  $(c \cdot k, c)$ -protrusion decomposition.

We also consider the following weaker version of the combinatorial property:

**B\*** [**Weak protrusion decomposition:**] There exist a constant  $c'$  and a non-decreasing function  $g : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that, for every  $x \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , if  $G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  are the graph and the parameter of a YES-instance of  $\Pi$  such that all  $c'$ -protrusions of  $G$  are of size at most  $x$ , then  $G$  has a  $(g(x) \cdot k, g(x))$ -protrusion decomposition.

To see that **B** implies **B\***, set  $c' = 1$  and consider the function  $g$ , with  $g(x) = c$ , where  $c$  is the constant in the definition of **B**.

## 4.2 The meta-algorithm

All our kernelization algorithms are based on the following procedure that makes use of some  $(f, a)$ -protrusion replacement family  $\mathcal{A} = \{A_i \mid i \geq 0\}$ . In the following procedure, given a set  $R \subseteq V(G)$ , we define  $\mathcal{C}_R$  as the set of connected components of  $G \setminus R$  that have treewidth at most  $|R|$ . Let  $X_R$  be the set of vertices that are either in  $R$  or in some of the connected components of  $\mathcal{C}_R$ .

Meta-kernelization( $t$ )

*Input:* An instance  $I$  of a parameterized graph problem.

*Output:* An equivalent instance  $I'$ .

If  $k \geq 0$  and  $|I| \leq k$ , we return  $I$ . While there exists some  $R \subseteq V(G)$  of size at most  $2t$  such that  $|X_R| \geq f(2 \cdot |R|) \cdot k^a$ , apply algorithm  $A_{2 \cdot |R|}$  with the pair  $(I, X_R)$  as input and replace  $I$  by the output  $I'$  of this algorithm. In case the parameter  $k'$  of  $I'$  is negative, then output a trivial YES or NO instance of  $\Pi$  depending on whether  $(I', -1) \in \Pi$  or not.

**Lemma 4.4.** *Procedure Meta-kernelization( $t$ ) runs in  $|I|^{O(t)}$  steps. Moreover, it outputs an instance with a graph  $G$  such that for all  $i \in \{0, \dots, t\}$ , all  $i$ -protrusions of  $G$  have size at most  $f(2i) \cdot k^a$ .*

*Proof.* Notice that the while-loop of the procedure will be applied less than  $n = |I|$  times, since each iteration decreases the size of the graph by at least one. In each iteration of the outer loop we have to consider  $O(|I|^{2t})$  different choices for  $R$ . For each choice of  $R$  the set  $X_R$  can be computed in linear time using the algorithm of [10]. That way, the procedure requires  $O(|I|^{2t+2})$  steps in total. To show that the input specifications of the algorithm  $A_{2 \cdot |R|}$  are satisfied when it is called, we argue that every time the algorithm  $A_{2 \cdot |R|}$  is applied to  $(I, X_R)$ ,  $X_R$  is a  $2 \cdot |R|$ -protrusion of the graph  $G$  in the instance of  $I$ . For this, notice that  $\partial_G(X_R) \subseteq R$  and  $\text{tw}(G[X_R]) \leq \text{tw}(G[X_R \setminus R]) + |R| \leq 2|R|$ .

Let  $I'$  be the output of Meta-kernelization( $t$ ) and  $G$  be the graph of  $I'$ . Assume towards a contradiction that for some  $j \in \{0, \dots, t\}$ ,  $G$  contains a  $j$ -protrusion  $X$  of size  $> f(2j) \cdot k^a$ . Let  $R = \partial_G(X)$ . Observe that  $|R| \leq j$  and that every connected component  $C$  of  $G \setminus R$  that contains at least one vertex of  $X$  is contained in  $X$ . Thus

$\text{tw}(C) \leq j$ , therefore  $X \subseteq X_R$ . But then,  $X_R$  is a  $2j$ -protrusion of  $G$  of size  $\geq f(2j) \cdot k^a$ , contradicting the fact that  $I'$  is the output of  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(t)$ .  $\square$

### 4.3 Two master theorems

Our results can be deduced from the following two master theorems. While their proofs are similar in spirit, we present them separately in order to illustrate the way properties **A**, **B**, and **B\*** are combined.

**Theorem 4.5.** *If a parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  has property **A** for some nonnegative constant  $a$  and property **B** for some constant  $c$ , then  $\Pi$  admits a kernel of size  $O(k^{a+1})$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{A} = \{A_i \mid i \geq 0\}$  be an  $(f, a)$ -protrusion replacement family for  $\Pi$ . We claim that the required kernelization algorithm is  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(c)$ .

Suppose that  $I$  is a YES-instance of  $\Pi$ .  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(c)$  procedure transforms  $I$  to a YES-instance  $I^*$  of  $\Pi$ . Assume that  $G^*$  and  $k^*$  are the graph and the parameter of  $I^*$  respectively. First of all we assume that  $k^* \geq 0$  else  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(c)$  returns a trivial YES or NO instance. Let  $\mathcal{P} = \{R_0, R_1, \dots, R_\rho\}$  be a  $(c \cdot k^*, c)$ -protrusion decomposition of  $G^*$  for some  $\rho \leq c \cdot k^*$ , whose existence follows from property **B**. Notice that  $k^* \leq k$ . Therefore, from Lemma 4.4, we have that

$$|V(G^*)| \leq |R_0| + \sum_{i=1}^{\rho} |R_i| \leq c \cdot k + c \cdot k \cdot f(2c) \cdot k^a = c \cdot k \cdot (f(2c) \cdot k^a + 1).$$

Hence, if the above procedure outputs an instance whose graph has more than  $c \cdot k \cdot (f(2c) \cdot k^a + 1)$  vertices, then the  $(I, k)$  is a NO-instance and in this case the algorithm outputs a trivial NO-instance of  $\Pi$ . Otherwise, by Lemma 4.4, the algorithm outputs, in  $O(|I|^{2c+2})$  steps, an equivalent instance with a graph on  $O(k^{a+1})$  vertices, as required.  $\square$

When  $a = 0$ , we can use the weaker condition **B\*** and have a linear kernel.

**Theorem 4.6.** *If a parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  has property **A** for  $a = 0$ , and property **B\*** for some constant  $c$ , then  $\Pi$  admits a linear kernel.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{A} = \{A_i \mid i \geq 0\}$  be an  $(f, 0)$ -protrusion replacement family for  $\Pi$ . (Notice that in this proof it is important that  $a = 0$ .)

Let also  $g : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  be a function such that, for every  $x \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , if  $G$  and  $k$  are the graph and the parameter of a YES-instance of  $\Pi$  such that all  $c$ -protrusions of  $G$  have size at most  $x$ , then  $G$  has a  $(g(x) \cdot k, g(x))$ -protrusion decomposition. We claim that the required kernelization algorithm is  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(c)$ . Let  $t = g(f(2c))$ .

Suppose now that  $I$  is a YES-instance of  $\Pi$ .  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(c)$  procedure transforms  $I$  to a YES-instance  $I^*$  of  $\Pi$ . Assume that  $G^*$  and  $k^*$  are the graph and the parameter of  $I^*$  respectively. First of all we assume that  $k^* \geq 0$  else  $\text{Meta-kernelization}(c)$  returns a trivial YES or NO instance. By Lemma 4.4,  $I^*$  has no  $c$ -protrusion of size at

least  $f(2c)$ . By applying Condition **B\*** for  $x = f(2c)$ , we have that  $G^*$  has a  $(t \cdot k^*, t)$ -protrusion decomposition  $\mathcal{P} = \{R_0, R_1, \dots, R_\rho\}$  for some  $\rho \leq t \cdot k^*$ . Notice that  $k^* \leq k$ . By Lemma 4.4, we have that

$$|V(G^*)| \leq |R_0| + \sum_{i=1}^{\rho} |R_i| \leq t \cdot k + t \cdot k \cdot f(2c) = t \cdot k \cdot (f(2c) + 1).$$

Hence, if the above procedure outputs an instance whose graph has more than  $t \cdot k \cdot (f(2c) + 1)$  vertices, then the algorithm outputs a trivial NO-instance of  $\Pi$ . Otherwise, by Lemma 4.4, the algorithm outputs, in  $O(|I|^{2t+2})$  steps, an equivalent instance on  $O(k)$  vertices, as required.  $\square$

We now have all necessary notions to present how the meta-algorithmic theorems mentioned in the introduction are derived from Master Theorems 4.5 and 4.6.

#### 4.4 Problems having the algorithmic and combinatorial properties

Our meta-algorithmic results follow by combining the following six results. The first four imply the protrusion replacement property **A**.

- Every annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 1$ . (Lemma 5.8, Subsection 5.2)
- Every annotated  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 2$ . (Lemma 5.12, Subsection 5.3)
- Every annotated  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 1$ . (Lemma 5.17, Subsection 5.4)
- Every parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  that has FII has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 0$ . (Lemma 5.19, Subsection 5.5)

The two last results imply the protrusion decomposition properties **B** and **B\***.

- Every  $r$ -coverable problem has the protrusion decomposition property **B**. (Lemma 6.1, Subsection 6.2)
- Every  $r$ -quasi-coverable problem has the weak protrusion decomposition property **B\***. (Lemma 6.4, Subsection 6.3).

#### 4.5 Derivation of Theorems 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3

All our main results are consequences of Master Theorems 4.5 and 4.6. Theorem 1.1 follows from Master Theorem 4.5 and Lemmata 5.8, 5.12, 5.17, and 6.1. Moreover, Theorem 1.3 follows from Master Theorem 4.6 and Lemmata 5.19 and 6.4. We conclude this section with the proof of Theorem 1.2

of [Theorem 1.2](#). Suppose that  $\Pi$  is NP-hard and its annotated version  $\Pi^\alpha$  is in NP. Consider an algorithm that, given an instance  $I = (G, k)$  of  $\Pi$ , applies first the kernelization algorithm of [Theorem 1.1](#) as a subroutine on the annotated instance  $((G, V(G)), k)$ , that is, all the vertices of  $G$  are set to be annotated. This subroutine outputs an equivalent *annotated* instance  $I' = ((G', Y'), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  where the number of vertices in  $G'$  is a polynomial function of  $k$ . The next step of the algorithm is to apply a polynomial time many-to-one reduction from  $\Pi^\alpha$  to  $\Pi$  on  $I'$  and obtain an equivalent instance  $I'' = (G'', k'')$  where  $|I''|$  is a polynomial function of  $|I'|$ . This reduction exists from the Cook–Levin theorem, as  $\Pi^\alpha \in \text{NP}$  and  $\Pi$  is NP-hard. Then  $|I''|$  is a polynomial function of  $k$  and this two-step polynomial-time algorithm is the desired kernelization algorithm for  $\Pi$ . The reduction from  $\Pi^\alpha$  to  $\Pi$  might output an instance  $I''$  with parameter  $k''$  where  $k''$  is exponential in  $|I''|$  because  $k''$  could be encoded in binary. However, since  $\Pi$  is a  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem,  $(I'', k'') \in \Pi$  if and only if  $(I'', k''') \in \Pi$ , where  $k''' = \min\{k'', |I''| + 1\}$ . The kernelization algorithm outputs  $(I'', k''')$ .  $\square$

## 5 Reduction Rules

In this section we prove the existence of protrusion replacement families for  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] graph problems and for parameterized problems that have FII.

### 5.1 Model checking on structures

In order to prove our reduction rules we consider an extension of  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO problems to a setting where the input is a structure rather than a graph. Specifically we consider the following problems.

MIN/MAX-CMSO ON STRUCTURES  
*Input:* A structure  $\alpha$  and a CMSO sentence  $\psi$ .  
*Output:* A minimum/maximum size subset  $S$  of  $V(G)$  (or  $E(G)$ ) such  
that  $(\alpha \diamond S) \models \psi$ .

EQ-CMSO ON STRUCTURES  
*Input:* A structure  $\alpha$ , a CMSO sentence  $\psi$ , and an integer  $k$ .  
*Output:* A subset  $S$  of  $V(G)$ , (or  $E(G)$ )  $|S| = k$  such that  $(\alpha \diamond S) \models \psi$ .

Observe that in the above problems the CMSO sentence is part of the input and not fixed as in the case of  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems. We will repeatedly apply the following result from [\[18, Theorem 5\]](#), see also [\[8\]](#).

**Proposition 5.1.** *There exists a computable function  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \times \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  and an algorithm that solves MIN/MAX/EQ-CMSO ON STRUCTURES in  $f(\mathbf{tw}(G_\alpha), |\psi|) \cdot |V(G_\alpha)|$  steps.*

Proposition 5.1 is a slight strengthening of Theorem 5 of [18]; what is shown there explicitly is the corresponding version where the input is a graph rather than a structure. Arnborg et al. [8] show the variant of Proposition 5.1 for MSO logic rather than CMSO logic. Either of these proofs can be made to work *both* on structures and with CMSO logic.

The construction of each protrusion replacement family depends on whether we are dealing with an annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ],  $p$ -EQ-CMSO[ $\psi$ ], or  $p$ -MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem, or whether the problem in question has FII. For the case of annotated problems, the constructions consist of three parts. In the first two parts, we focus on reducing the set of annotated vertices, and in the last part we reduce the set of vertices. In all cases, we assume that we are given a sufficiently large  $t$ -protrusion. In the following discussion we deal with annotated  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems where the set  $S$  in question is a set of vertices. The case where  $S$  is a set of edges can be dealt with in an identical manner.

## 5.2 Protrusion replacement families for annotated $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] Problems

We start from the existence of a protrusion replacement family for annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems. The technique employed in this section will act as a template for other types of annotated problems. Recall that in an annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem  $\Pi^\alpha$  we are given a structure  $(G, Y)$  and an integer  $k$ . The objective is to find a set  $S \subseteq Y$  of size at most  $k$  such that  $(G, S)$  models some CMSO sentence  $\psi$ . For our reduction rule, we are also given a sufficiently large  $t$ -protrusion  $X$ . In the first step of the reduction, we show that the set  $Y \cap X$  can be substituted in  $O(|X|)$  steps by a new set  $Z$  of  $O(k)$  vertices such that  $((G, Y), k)$  is a YES-instance if and only if  $((G, Z \cup (Y \setminus X)), k)$  is a YES-instance. In the second step we show that the  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  can be partitioned into  $O(k)$   $t'$ -protrusions, where  $t' = O(t)$ , such that each  $t'$ -protrusion contains vertices from  $Z$  only in its (bounded size) boundary. In the third and final step of the reduction rule, we replace the largest  $t'$ -protrusion with an equivalent, but smaller,  $t'$ -boundaried graph. For the case of  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems, these three reduction steps correspond to Lemmata 5.3, 5.4, and 5.6 respectively.

We start by proving a lemma that lets us analyze the interior of a protrusion without bothering about the rest of the graph.

**Lemma 5.2.** *There is an algorithm that given two boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, S_R)$  of type (graph, vertex set) and a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  finds a minimum size set  $S_X \subseteq Y_X$  such that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi$  in time  $|V(G_X \oplus G_R)| \cdot f(|\psi|, \mathbf{tw}(G_X \oplus G_R))$ .*



*Proof.* Let  $(G', Y', S'_R) = (G_X, Y_X, \emptyset) \oplus (G_R, \emptyset, S_R)$ . Finding the desired set  $S_X \subseteq Y$  now amounts to finding a minimum size set  $S'_X \subseteq Y'$  such that  $(G', S'_X \cup S'_R) \models \psi$ . This is easily formulated as MIN-CMSO ON STRUCTURES and hence may be solved in the desired running time by Proposition 5.1.  $\square$

**Reducing the set of annotated vertices.** The first step of our reduction rule is based on the following lemma.

**Lemma 5.3.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem and let  $t$  be an integer. Then there exists an algorithm that given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  of  $G$ , outputs in  $O(|X|)$  steps an equivalent instance  $((G, Y'), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$ , where  $|Y' \cap X| = O(k)$  and  $Y' \subseteq Y$ .*

We remark that the constants hidden in the “ $O$ ”-notation of the complexity of the algorithm and the size of its output depend only on the length of the CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  defining  $\Pi^\alpha$  and the constant  $t$ . From now onwards, we will not explicitly mention this.

*Proof.* Let  $\psi$  be the CMSO-sentence mentioned in the definition of  $\Pi^\alpha$ . Lemma 3.2 implies that the canonical equivalence relation  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  has finitely many equivalence classes on the set of boundaried structures of arity two with label set  $\{1, \dots, t\}$ . Let  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  be a set containing a representative (a boundaried structure of arity two) for each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  with the minimum number of vertices in the graph of a structure. Given  $G, Y$  and  $X$  we define the sets  $B = \partial_G(X)$ ,  $R = (V(G) \setminus X) \cup B$  and the boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, Y_R)$  as follows. The boundaried graphs  $G_X$  and  $G_R$  are just  $G[X]$  and  $G[R]$  respectively. Both have boundary  $B$ , with labels from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  such that  $G_X \oplus G_R = G$ . Similarly  $Y_X = Y \cap X$  while  $Y_R = Y \setminus X$ , such that  $(G, Y) = (G_X, Y_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ .

For every structure  $\alpha = (G_R^\alpha, S_R^\alpha) \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  we find using Lemma 5.2 a minimum size set  $S_X^\alpha \subseteq Y_X$  such that  $(G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus \alpha \models \psi$ . Since  $|\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)|$  and the size of each structure in  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  depends only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ , and the treewidth of  $G[X]$  is at most  $t$ , this takes time  $O(|X|)$ . Now, define

$$Y'_X = \bigcup_{\alpha \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)} \begin{cases} S_X^\alpha & \text{if } |S_X^\alpha| \leq k, \\ \emptyset & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We set  $Y' = Y'_X \cup Y_R$  (formally  $Y'_X$  and  $Y_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so actually  $Y'$  is the second element of the 2-tuple of  $(G_X, Y'_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ , i.e.,  $Y' = ((G_X, Y'_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R))[2]$ , but this is just semantics). Since  $|\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)|$  depends only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$  the construction of  $Y'$  implies  $|Y' \cap X| = O(k)$ .

To complete the proof, it remains to show that  $((G, Y'), k) \in \Pi^\alpha$  if and only if  $((G, Y), k) \in \Pi^\alpha$ . For the forward direction we have that  $Y' \subseteq Y$  and hence feasible solutions to  $((G, Y'), k)$  are also feasible for  $((G, Y), k)$ . We now turn to proving the

reverse direction. Let  $S \subseteq Y$ ,  $|S| \leq k$  be such that  $(G, S) \models \psi$ . Let  $S_X = X \cap S$  and  $S_R = S \setminus X$ . Observe that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) = (G, S)$  and that  $|S_X| + |S_R| = |S| \leq k$ . Choose  $\alpha = (G_R^\alpha, S_R^\alpha) \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  such that  $\alpha \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_R, S_R)$ . Let  $S_X^\alpha \subseteq Y_X$  be the set computed for  $\alpha$  in the previous paragraph. Since

$$(G_X, S_X) \oplus \alpha \models \psi \iff (G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \iff \text{true}$$

it follows that  $|S_X^\alpha| \leq |S_X| \leq k$ . Thus  $S_X^\alpha \subseteq Y_X'$ . Let  $S' = S_X^\alpha \cup S_R$  (again, formally  $S_X^\alpha$  and  $S_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so actually  $S' = ((G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus (G_R, S_R))[2]$ ). We have that  $S' \subseteq Y'$ ,  $|S'| \leq |S_X^\alpha| + |S_R| \leq |S_X| + |S_R| = |S| \leq k$ . Finally we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} & (G, S') \models \psi \\ \iff & (G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \\ \iff & (G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus \alpha \models \psi \\ \iff & \text{true.} \end{aligned}$$

This concludes the proof. □

**Partitioning Protrusions.** In the second step of the reduction rule, the  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  is partitioned into  $O(k)$  smaller  $t'$ -protrusions for some  $t' = O(t)$ .

**Lemma 5.4.** *Let  $G$  be a graph,  $Y$  be a subset of its vertices, and  $k$  be an integer. Let also  $X$  be a  $t$ -protrusion and  $Z = X \cap Y$  such that  $|Z| \leq k$ . There is an  $O(|X|)$  step algorithm that outputs a collection  $\mathcal{Q}$  of  $(4t + 2)$ -protrusions such that  $X = \bigcup_{Q \in \mathcal{Q}} Q$ ,  $|\mathcal{Q}| = O(k)$ , and for every  $Q \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $Z \cap Q \subseteq \partial_G(Q)$ .*

*Proof.* We assume that  $G[X]$  is connected, otherwise we work independently on its connected components. We find a nice tree decomposition of  $G[X]$  and then we add  $\partial_G(X)$  to all its bags. We denote the resulting tree decomposition by  $(T, \mathcal{X})$  and, clearly, it has width most  $2t$ .

The decomposition  $(T, \mathcal{X})$  can be constructed in  $O(|X|)$  steps, see e.g. [10]. Now we mark a subset of the nodes of  $T$ . For each vertex  $z \in Z$  we mark, if exists, the forget node  $t_z$  with the property that  $\{z\} = X_{t_z} \setminus X_{t'_z}$ , where  $t_z$  is the child of  $t'_z$  in  $T$ . As each vertex is forgotten at most once in a nice tree decomposition, so far we have marked at most  $|Z| + 1$  nodes of  $T$ . Now, as long as this is possible, we keep marking each bag that is the lowest common ancestor of two already marked nodes. Using a standard counting argument for trees, it follows that, in the worst case, this operation doubles the number of marked nodes. Hence, there are at most  $O(|Z|)$  marked nodes; we denote this set by  $M$ . We say that two nodes  $t_1, t_2 \in M$  are *linked* if these nodes are the only marked nodes of the  $(t_1, t_2)$ -path in  $T$ . We define the set

$$P = \{(t_1, t_2) \mid t_1 \text{ and } t_2 \text{ are linked nodes of } M \text{ and } t_1 \text{ is a predecessor of } t_2\}.$$

We observe that  $|P| = O(|Z|)$  and each marked node belongs to some pair in  $P$ . Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the set of the connected components of  $G[X] \setminus \bigcup_{t \in M} X_t$ . By the construction of  $M$ , the neighborhood of a connected component  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  may intersect either a single bag  $X_t$  of  $T$ , or two bags  $X_{t_1}, X_{t_2}$  of  $T$  such that  $(t_1, t_2) \in P$ . In the first case, we define  $R(C)$  to be some pair in  $P$  that contains  $t$  as an endpoint (if there are many such pairs, we make an arbitrary choice). In the second case, we define  $R(C) = \{t_1, t_2\}$ . Given a pair  $p$  of  $P$ , we use the notation  $L^{-1}$  to denote the union of the vertex sets of all the connected components of  $\mathcal{C}$  that map to  $p$ . It is now easy to see that that  $\mathcal{R} = \{L^{-1}(p) \mid p \in P\}$  is a partition of  $G[X] \setminus \bigcup_{t \in M} X_t$ . As each vertex from  $Z$  is in some bag corresponding to a marked node, none of the sets in  $\mathcal{R}$  intersects  $Z$ . Moreover the neighborhood in  $G$  of each set in  $\mathcal{R}$  is a subset of at most two bags of  $(T, \mathcal{X})$  and thus its neighborhood has at most  $2(2t + 1)$  vertices. We now define the set  $\mathcal{Q} = \{V(R) \cup \partial_G(V(R)) \mid R \in \mathcal{R}\}$ . Then each member  $Q$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  is an  $(4t + 2)$ -protrusion of  $G$  where  $Z \cap Q \subseteq \partial_G(Q)$ . Moreover,  $\bigcup_{Q \in \mathcal{Q}} Q = X$  and the lemma follows as  $|\mathcal{Q}| = |P| = O(k)$ .  $\square$

We will also need the following simple decomposition lemma for  $t$ -protrusions.

**Lemma 5.5.** *If a graph  $G$  contains a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  where  $|X| > c > 0$ , then it also contains a  $(2t + 1)$ -protrusion  $Y$  where  $c < |Y| \leq 2c$ . Moreover, given a tree-decomposition of  $X$  of width at most  $r$ , a tree decomposition of  $Y$  of width at most  $2t$  can be found in  $O(|X|)$  steps.*

*Proof.* If  $|X| \leq 2c$ , we are done. Assume that  $|X| > 2c$  and let

$$(T, \mathcal{X} = \{X_t\}_{t \in V(T)}, t)$$

be a nice tree-decomposition of  $G[X]$ , rooted at some, arbitrary chosen, node  $t$  of  $T$ . Given a vertex  $x$  of the rooted tree  $T$ , we denote by  $D(x)$  the subset of  $V(T)$  containing  $x$  and all its descendants in  $T$  and by  $T_x$  the subtree of  $T$  rooted at  $x$ . Let  $B \subseteq V(T)$  be the set containing each vertex  $x$  of  $T$  with the property that the vertices appearing in  $\bigcup_{y \in D(x)} X_y$  (i.e. the vertices of the nodes corresponding to  $x$  and its descendants) are more than  $c$ . As  $|X| \geq 2c$ ,  $B$  is a non-empty set. We choose  $b$  to be a member of  $B$  whose descendants in  $T$  do not belong in  $B$ . The choice of  $b$  and the fact that  $T$  is a binary tree ensure that  $c < |\bigcup_{y \in D(b)} X_y| \leq 2c$ . We define  $Y = \partial_G(X) \cup \bigcup_{y \in D(b)} X_y$  and observe that

$$(T_b, \mathcal{X}' = \{\partial_G(X) \cup X_t\}_{t \in D(b)}, b) \tag{29}$$

is a tree decomposition of  $G[Y]$ . As  $|\partial_G(X)| \leq t$ , the width of the tree decomposition in (29) is at most  $2t$ . Moreover, it holds that  $\partial_G(Y) \subseteq \partial_G(X) \cup X_b$ , therefore  $Y$  is a  $(2t + 1)$ -protrusion of  $G$ .  $\square$

**Reducing Protrusions.** In the third phase of our reduction rule, we find a protrusion to replace, and perform the replacement.

**Lemma 5.6.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -MIN/EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem. Then for every integer  $t$  there is a  $c_1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  (depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ ) and an algorithm that given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  of  $G$ , where  $c_1 < |X| \leq 2c_1$  and  $X \cap Y \subseteq \partial_G(X)$ , outputs, in  $O(|X|)$  steps, an equivalent instance  $((G^*, Y^*), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  such that  $|V(G^*)| < |V(G)|$ .*

*Proof.* We define an equivalence relation between boundaried structures of type (graph, vertex set) as follows: Let  $\alpha_1 = (G_1, Y_1)$  and  $\alpha_2 = (G_2, Y_2)$  be two boundaried structures with labelling functions  $\lambda_1 : \delta(G_1) \rightarrow \{1, \dots, t\}$  and  $\lambda_2 : \delta(G_2) \rightarrow \{1, \dots, t\}$  respectively, such that  $Y_1 \subseteq \delta(G_1)$  and  $Y_2 \subseteq \delta(G_2)$ .

We say that  $\alpha_1 \approx \alpha_2$  if the following conditions are satisfied:

1.  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$
2.  $\lambda_1(Y_1) = \lambda_2(Y_2)$
3. for every  $S_1 \subseteq Y_1$  and  $S_2 \subseteq Y_2$  such that  $\lambda_1(S_1) = \lambda_2(S_2)$ , it follows that  $(G_1, S_1) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_2, S_2)$ .

Notice that  $\approx$  is an equivalence relation. Because, in the above definition, the sets  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  cannot have more than  $t$  vertices, the number of equivalence classes of  $\approx$  depends only on  $t$  and the number of equivalence classes of  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  on boundaried structures of arity two whose label set is a subset of  $\{1, \dots, t\}$ . By Lemma 3.2 the number of such equivalence classes is finite and upper bounded by a function of  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Thus the number of equivalence classes of  $\approx$  is also upper bounded by a function of  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a set of minimum size representatives of the equivalence classes of  $\approx$  and let  $c_1 = \max_{\alpha \in \mathcal{S}} |V(G_\alpha)|$ .

Let  $G, Y$  and  $X$  be a graph and vertex sets as in the statement of the Lemma. We now define the sets  $B = \partial_G(X)$ ,  $R = (V(G) \setminus X) \cup B$  and the boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, Y_R)$  as follows. The boundaried graphs  $G_X$  and  $G_R$  are just  $G[X]$  and  $G[R]$  respectively. Both have boundary  $B$ , with labels from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  such that  $G_X \oplus G_R = G$ . Similarly  $Y_X = Y \cap X$  while  $Y_R = Y \setminus X$ , such that  $(G, Y) = (G_X, Y_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ . Observe that  $|V(G_X)| = |X| > c_1$ .

Our algorithm has in its source code hard-wired a table that for every boundaried structure  $\alpha$  of type (graph, vertex set) with label set from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  and  $|V(G_\alpha)| \leq 2c_1$  contains the  $\beta \in \mathcal{S}$  such that  $\beta \approx \alpha$ . The size of this table is a constant that depends only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . The algorithm looks up in the table and finds the representative  $(G'_X, Y'_X) \in \mathcal{S}$  such that  $(G'_X, Y'_X) \approx (G_X, Y_X)$ . By construction we have  $|V(G'_X)| \leq c_1 < |V(G_X)|$ . The algorithm outputs the instance  $((G', Y'), k)$  where  $(G', Y') = (G'_X, Y'_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ . Since  $|V(G'_X)| < |V(G_X)|$  it follows that  $|V(G')| < |V(G)|$  and it remains to argue that the instances  $((G, Y), k)$  and  $((G', Y'), k)$  are equivalent.

Suppose that  $((G, Y), k)$  is a YES-instance and let  $S \subseteq Y$ ,  $|S| \leq k$  ( $|S| = k$  for  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$ ) be such that  $(G, S) \models \psi$ . Let  $S_X = X \cap S$  and  $S_R = S \setminus X$ . Observe that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) = (G, S)$ ,  $S_X = S_X \cap X \subseteq Y \cap X \subseteq \partial(X)$ , and that  $|S_X| +$

$|S_R| = |S|$ . Let  $S'_X$  be the subset of  $\delta(G'_X)$  such that  $\lambda_{G'_X}(S'_X) = \lambda_{G_X}(S_X)$ . Since  $S_X \subseteq Y_X \subseteq \delta(G_X)$  it follows that  $|S_X| = |S'_X|$ . Furthermore, property 3 of  $\approx$  yields that  $(G_X, S_X) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G'_X, S'_X)$ . Let  $S' = S'_X \cup S_R$  (formally  $S'_X$  and  $S_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so we set  $S' = ((G'_X, S'_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R))[2]$ ). Since  $S_R \cap \delta(G_R) = \emptyset$  we have that  $|S'| = |S'_X| + |S_R| = |S_X| + |S_R| = |S|$ . Thus, if  $|S| \leq k$  then  $|S'| \leq k$ , while if  $|S| = k$  then  $|S'| = k$ . Finally we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} & (G', S') \models \psi \\ \iff & (G'_X, S'_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \\ \iff & (G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \\ \iff & (G, S) \models \psi \iff \text{true}. \end{aligned}$$

This concludes the forward direction of the proof. The reverse direction is symmetric.  $\square$

Lemmata 5.3, 5.4, and 5.6 together yield a reduction rule for all annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems.

**Lemma 5.7.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem. Then for every  $t$ , there is a constant  $c_2 > 0$  (depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ ) and an algorithm that, given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  with  $|X| > c_2k$ , outputs, in  $O(|X|)$  steps, an equivalent instance  $((G^*, Y^*), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  such that  $|V^*| < |V|$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $|\partial_G(X)| = t$ . The algorithm starts by applying Lemma 5.3 to  $X$ , and producing an equivalent instance  $((G, Y'), k)$  where  $|Y' \cap X| \leq ak$ , for some constant  $a$  depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $Z = Y' \cap X$ . The next step is to apply Lemma 5.4 and construct a collection  $\mathcal{Q}$  of  $(4t+2)$ -protrusions such that  $X = \bigcup_{Q \in \mathcal{Q}} Q$ ,  $Z \cap Q \subseteq \partial_G(Q)$  for each  $Q \in \mathcal{Q}$ , and  $|Q| \leq bk$  for some constant  $b$  depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $c_1$  be the constant as guaranteed by Lemma 5.6 when applied on  $(8t+4)$ -protrusions, and set  $c_2 = c_1 \cdot b$ . By the pigeon-hole principle, some  $(4t+2)$ -protrusion  $Q$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$  has size at least  $|X|/bk > c_1$ . We apply Lemma 5.5 and obtain a  $(8t+4)$ -protrusion  $Q' \subseteq Q$  such that  $Z \cap Q' \subseteq \partial(Q')$  and  $c_1 < |Q'| \leq 2c_1$ . Finally we apply the algorithm of Lemma 5.6 on  $Q'$  and construct an equivalent instance of  $\Pi^\alpha$  as required.  $\square$

We are now ready to prove the following result.

**Lemma 5.8.** *Every annotated  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 1$ .*

*Proof.* According to the terminology that we introduced in Section 4, we have to prove that there exist an  $(f, 1)$ -protrusion replacement family  $\mathcal{A}$  for  $\Pi^\alpha$ . Indeed, this directly follows from Lemma 5.7 if we define  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that for every  $r$ ,  $f(r)$  is the constant  $c_2$  of Lemma 5.7.  $\square$

### 5.3 Protrusion replacement for annotated $p$ -EQ-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] Problems

In this section we give a reduction rule for annotated  $p$ -EQ-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems. The rule is very similar to the one for the  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems described in the previous section. The main difference between the two problem variants is that we now need to keep track of solutions of *every* possible size between 0 and  $k$ , instead of just the smallest one. Because of this, we require the protrusion to contain at least  $ck^2$  vertices instead of  $ck$  vertices, in order to be able to reduce it. We start by proving adaptations of Lemmata 5.2 and 5.3 to  $p$ -EQ-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems.

**Lemma 5.9.** *There is an algorithm that given two boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, S_R)$  of type (graph, vertex set), a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  and non-negative integer  $k$ , finds a  $S_X \subseteq Y_X$  of size  $k$  such that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi$  or concludes that no such set exists in time  $|V(G_X \oplus G_R)| \cdot f(|\psi|, \text{tw}(G_X \oplus G_R))$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $(G', Y', S'_R) = (G_X, Y_X, \emptyset) \oplus (G_R, \emptyset, S_R)$ . Finding the desired set  $S_X \subseteq Y$  now amounts to finding a set  $S'_X \subseteq Y'$  of size  $k$  such that  $(G', S'_X \cup S'_R) \models \psi$ . This is easily formulated as EQ-CMSO ON STRUCTURES and hence may be solved in the desired running time by Proposition 5.1.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.10.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -EQ-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem and let  $t$  be an integer. Then there exist an algorithm that given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  of  $G$ , outputs in  $O(k|X|)$  steps an equivalent instance  $((G, Y'), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$ , where  $|Y' \cap X| = O(k^2)$  and  $Y' \subseteq Y$ .*

*Proof.* The proof of the lemma starts exactly as in the proof of Lemma 5.3. For a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  defining  $\Pi^\alpha$ , Lemma 3.2 implies that the canonical equivalence relation  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  has finitely many equivalence classes on the set of boundaried structures of arity two with label set  $\{1, \dots, t\}$ . We denote by  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  a set containing a representative (a boundaried structure of arity two) for each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  with the minimum number of vertices in the graph of a structure. For given  $G, Y$  and  $X$ , we define the sets  $B = \partial_G(X)$ ,  $R = (V(G) \setminus X) \cup B$  and the boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, Y_R)$  as follows. The boundaried graphs  $G_X$  and  $G_R$  are just  $G[X]$  and  $G[R]$  respectively. Both have boundary  $B$ , with labels from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  such that  $G_X \oplus G_R = G$ . Similarly  $Y_X = Y \cap X$  while  $Y_R = Y \setminus X$ , such that  $(G, Y) = (G_X, Y_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ .

For every structure  $\alpha = (G_R^\alpha, S_R^\alpha) \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  and every integer  $i \leq k$  we use Lemma 5.9 to find a set  $S_X^{\alpha, i} \subseteq Y_X$  such that  $|S_X^{\alpha, i}| = i$  and  $(G_X, S_X^{\alpha, i}) \oplus \alpha \models \psi$ . If no such set exists we set  $S_X^{\alpha, i} = \emptyset$ . Since  $|\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)|$  and the size of each structure in  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  depends only on  $\psi$  and  $t$ , and the treewidth of  $G[X]$  is at most  $t$ , this takes time  $O(k|X|)$ . Now, define

$$Y'_X = \bigcup_{\substack{\alpha \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t) \\ i \leq k}} S_X^{\alpha, i}$$

We set  $Y' = Y'_X \cup Y_R$  (formally  $Y'_X$  and  $Y_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so actually  $Y' = ((G_X, Y'_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R))[2]$ ). Since  $|\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)|$  depends only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$  the construction of  $Y'$  implies  $|Y' \cap X| = O(k^2)$ .

To complete the proof, it remains to show that  $((G, Y'), k) \in \Pi^\alpha$  if and only if  $((G, Y), k) \in \Pi^\alpha$ . For the forward direction we have that  $Y' \subseteq Y$  and hence feasible solutions to  $((G, Y'), k)$  are also feasible for  $((G, Y), k)$ . We now turn to proving the reverse direction. Let  $S \subseteq Y$ ,  $|S| = k$  be such that  $(G, S) \models \psi$ . Let  $S_X = X \cap S$  and  $S_R = S \setminus X$ . Observe that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) = (G, S)$  and that  $|S_X| + |S_R| = |S| = k$ . Choose  $\alpha = (G_R^\alpha, S_R^\alpha) \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  such that  $\alpha \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_R, S_R)$ . Set  $i = |S_X|$ , and let  $S_X^{\alpha, i} \subseteq Y_X$  be the set computed for  $\alpha$  and  $i$  in the previous paragraph. The existence of  $S_X^{\alpha, i}$  of size  $i$  is guaranteed by the fact that

$$(G_X, S_X) \oplus \alpha \models \psi \iff (G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \iff \text{true}.$$

By construction  $S_X^{\alpha, i} \subseteq Y'_X$ . Let  $S' = S_X^{\alpha, i} \cup S_R$  (again, formally  $S_X^{\alpha, i}$  and  $S_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so actually  $S' = ((G_X, S_X^{\alpha, i}) \oplus (G_R, S_R))[2]$ ). We have that  $S' \subseteq Y'$ . Further, since  $S_R \cap \delta(G_R) = \emptyset$  we have that  $|S'| = |S_X^{\alpha, i}| + |S_R| = |S_X| + |S_R| = |S| = k$ . Finally we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} (G, S') &\models \psi \\ \iff (G_X, S_X^{\alpha, i}) \oplus (G_R, S_R) &\models \psi \\ \iff (G_X, S_X^{\alpha, i}) \oplus \alpha &\models \psi \\ \iff &\text{true}. \end{aligned}$$

This concludes the proof.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.11.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem. Then for every  $t$ , there is a constant  $c_2 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  (depending only on  $|\psi|$ , and  $t$ ) and an algorithm that, given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  with  $|X| > c_2 k^2$ , outputs in  $O(k \cdot |X|)$  steps an equivalent instance  $((G^*, Y^*), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  such that  $|V^*| < |V|$ .*

*Proof.* The algorithm starts by applying Lemma 5.10 to  $X$ , and producing an equivalent instance  $((G, Y'), k)$  where  $|Y' \cap X| \leq ak^2$ , for some constant  $a$  depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $Z = Y' \cap X$ . The next step is to apply Lemma 5.4 and construct a collection  $\mathcal{Q}$  of  $(4t + 2)$ -protrusions such that  $X = \bigcup_{Q \in \mathcal{Q}} Q$ ,  $Z \cap Q \subseteq \partial_G(Q)$  for each  $Q \in \mathcal{Q}$ , and  $|\mathcal{Q}| \leq bk^2$  for some constant  $b$  depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $c_1$  be the constant as guaranteed by Lemma 5.6 when applied on  $(8t + 4)$ -protrusions, and set  $c_2 = c_1 \cdot b$ . By the pigeon-hole principle, some  $(4t + 2)$ -protrusion  $Q$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$  has size at least  $|X|/bk^2 > c_1$ . We apply Lemma 5.5 and obtain a  $(8t + 4)$ -protrusion  $Q' \subseteq Q$  such that  $Z \cap Q' \subseteq \partial(Q')$  and  $c_1 < |Q'| \leq 2c_1$ . Finally we apply the algorithm of Lemma 5.6 on  $Q'$  and construct an equivalent instance of  $\Pi^\alpha$  as required.  $\square$

We are now ready to prove the following result.

**Lemma 5.12.** *Every annotated  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 2$ .*

*Proof.* According to the terminology that we introduced in Section 4, we have to prove that there exists an  $(f, 2)$ -protrusion replacement family  $\mathcal{A}$  for  $\Pi^\alpha$ . Indeed, this directly follows from Lemma 5.11 if we define  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that for every  $r$ ,  $f(r)$  is the constant  $c_2$  in the proof of the same lemma.  $\square$

#### 5.4 Protrusion replacement for annotated $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$ Problems

We now give a reduction rule for annotated  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems. The rule is still similar to the ones described in the two previous sections, but differs more from the  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems than  $p$ -EQ-CMSO $[\psi]$  did. We start by proving a variant of lemma 5.2 for  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems.

**Lemma 5.13.** *There is an algorithm that given two boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, S_R)$  of type (graph, vertex set) and a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  finds a set  $S_X \subseteq V(G_X)$  such that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi$  and  $|S_X \cap Y_X|$  is maximized. The running time of the algorithm is  $|V(G_X \oplus G_R)| \cdot f(|\psi|, \mathbf{tw}(G_X \oplus G_R))$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $(G', Y', S'_R, V') = (G_X, Y_X, \emptyset, V(G_X)) \oplus (G_R, \emptyset, S_R, \emptyset)$ . Finding the desired set  $S_X$  now amounts to finding a set  $S'_X \subseteq V'$  such that  $(G', S'_X \cup S'_R) \models \psi$  and  $|S'_X \cap Y'|$  is maximized. This is easily formulated as MAX-CMSO ON STRUCTURES and hence may be solved in the desired running time by Proposition 5.1.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.14.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem and let  $t$  be an integer. There exists an algorithm that given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  of  $G$ , outputs in  $O(|X|)$  steps an equivalent instance  $((G, Y'), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$ , where  $|Y' \cap X| = O(k)$  and  $Y' \subseteq Y$ .*

*Proof.* By Lemma 3.2, for a CMSO-sentence  $\psi$  defining  $\Pi^\alpha$ , the canonical equivalence relation  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  has finitely many equivalence classes on the set of boundaried structures of arity two with label set  $\{1, \dots, t\}$ . As in proofs of Lemmata 5.3 and 5.10, we define the following objects. We set  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  to be a set containing a representative (a boundaried structure of arity two) for each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  with the minimum number of vertices in the graph of a structure. Also for  $G, Y$  and  $X$ , we define sets  $B = \partial_G(X)$ ,  $R = (V(G) \setminus X) \cup B$ , and the boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, Y_R)$  as follows. Again, the boundaried graphs  $G_X = G[X]$  and  $G_R = G[R]$  have boundary  $B$  with labels from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  such that  $G_X \oplus G_R = G$ . Similarly  $Y_X = Y \cap X$  while  $Y_R = Y \setminus X$ , such that  $(G, Y) = (G_X, Y_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ .

By making use of Lemma 5.13, for every structure  $\alpha = (G_R^\alpha, S_R^\alpha) \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$ , we find a set  $S_X^\alpha \subseteq V(G_X)$  such that  $(G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus \alpha \models \psi$  and  $|S_X^\alpha \cap Y_X|$  is maximized. Since  $|\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)|$  and the size of each structure in  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  depends only on



$|\psi|$  and  $t$ , and the treewidth of  $G[X]$  is at most  $t$ , this takes time  $O(|X|)$ . If  $|S_X^\alpha \cap Y_X| \leq k$ , let  $\hat{S}_X^\alpha = S_X^\alpha \cap Y_X$ . On the other hand, if  $|S_X^\alpha \cap Y_X| > k$ , set  $\hat{S}_X^\alpha$  to be a set of arbitrarily chosen  $k$  vertices from  $S_X^\alpha \cap Y_X$ . Now, define

$$Y'_X = \bigcup_{\alpha \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)} \hat{S}_X^\alpha.$$

We set  $Y' = Y'_X \cup Y_R$  (formally  $Y'_X$  and  $Y_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so actually  $Y' = ((G_X, Y'_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R))[2]$ ). Since  $|\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)|$  depends only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$  the construction of  $Y'$  implies  $|Y' \cap X| = O(k)$ .

To complete the proof, it remains to show that  $((G, Y'), k) \in \Pi^\alpha$  if and only if  $((G, Y), k) \in \Pi^\alpha$ . For the forward direction we have that  $Y' \subseteq Y$ , and hence for any set  $S \subseteq V(G)$  such that  $(G, S) \models \psi$  and  $|S \cap Y'| \geq k$  we also have that  $|S \cap Y| \geq k$ . We now turn to proving the reverse direction. Let  $S \subseteq V(G)$ ,  $|S \cap Y| \geq k$  be such that  $(G, S) \models \psi$ . Let  $S_X = X \cap S$  and  $S_R = S \setminus X$ . Observe that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) = (G, S)$  and that  $|S_X \cap Y_X| + |S_R \cap Y_R| = |S \cap Y| \geq k$ . Choose  $\alpha = (G_R^\alpha, S_R^\alpha) \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  such that  $\alpha \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_R, S_R)$ . Let  $S_X^\alpha \subseteq V(G_X)$  be the set computed for  $\alpha$  in the previous paragraph. Since

$$(G_X, S_X) \oplus \alpha \models \psi \iff (G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \iff \text{true}$$

it follows that  $|S_X^\alpha \cap Y_X| \geq |S_X \cap Y_X|$ . Furthermore we have that  $|S_X^\alpha \cap Y'_X| \geq |\hat{S}_X^\alpha| \geq \min(|S_X \cap Y_X|, k)$ .

Let  $S' = S_X^\alpha \cup S_R$  (again, formally  $S_X^\alpha$  and  $S_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so actually  $S' = ((G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus (G_R, S_R))[2]$ ). We have that

$$|S' \cap Y'| \geq |S_X^\alpha \cap Y'_X| + |S_R \cap Y_R| \geq \min(|S_X \cap Y_X|, k) + |S_R \cap Y_R| \geq \min(|S \cap Y|, k) \geq k.$$

Finally we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} & (G, S') \models \psi \\ \iff & (G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \\ \iff & (G_X, S_X^\alpha) \oplus \alpha \models \psi \\ \iff & \text{true.} \end{aligned}$$

This concludes the proof.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.15.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem. Then for every integer  $t$  there is a  $c_1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  (depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ ) and an algorithm that given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  of  $G$ , where  $c_1 < |X| \leq 2c_1$  and  $X \cap Y \subseteq \partial_G(X)$ , outputs, in  $O(|X|)$  steps, an equivalent instance  $((G^*, Y^*), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  such that  $|V(G^*)| < |V(G)|$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\psi$  be the CMSO-sentence mentioned in the definition of  $\Pi^\alpha$ . By Lemma 3.2, the canonical equivalence relation  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  has finitely many equivalence classes on the set of boundaried structures of arity two with label set  $\{1, \dots, t\}$ . Let  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t)$  be a set containing a representative (a boundaried structure of arity two) for each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  with the minimum number of vertices in the graph of a structure. We now define an equivalence relation  $\approx$  between boundaried structures  $\alpha = (G_\alpha, Y_\alpha)$  of type (graph, vertex set) that satisfy  $Y_\alpha \subseteq \delta(G_\alpha)$ . Let  $\alpha_1 = (G_1, Y_1)$  and  $\alpha_2 = (G_2, Y_2)$  be two boundaried structures with labelling functions  $\lambda_1 : \delta(G_1) \rightarrow \{1, \dots, t\}$  and  $\lambda_2 : \delta(G_2) \rightarrow \{1, \dots, t\}$  respectively, such that  $Y_1 \subseteq \delta(G_1)$  and  $Y_2 \subseteq \delta(G_2)$ . We say that  $\alpha_1 \approx \alpha_2$  if the following conditions are satisfied:

1.  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$
2.  $\lambda_1(Y_1) = \lambda_2(Y_2)$
3. for every  $S_1 \subseteq V(G_1)$  there is a  $S_2 \subseteq V(G_2)$  such that  $\lambda_1(S_1 \cap \delta(G_1)) = \lambda_2(S_2 \cap \delta(G_2))$ , and  $(G_1, S_1) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_2, S_2)$ .
4. for every  $S_2 \subseteq V(G_2)$  there is a  $S_1 \subseteq V(G_1)$  such that  $\lambda_1(S_1 \cap \delta(G_1)) = \lambda_2(S_2 \cap \delta(G_2))$ , and  $(G_1, S_1) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_2, S_2)$ .

Notice that  $\approx$  is an equivalence relation. Further, consider two boundaried structures  $\alpha_1 = (G_1, Y_1)$  and  $\alpha_2 = (G_2, Y_2)$  such that  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$ ,  $\lambda_1(Y_1) = \lambda_2(Y_2)$ , and for each subset  $L \subseteq \{1, \dots, t\}$  the sets

$$\{\beta \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t) : \exists S_1 \subseteq V(G_1), \lambda_1(S_1 \cap \delta(G_1)) = L \wedge (G_1, S_1) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} \beta\}$$

and

$$\{\beta \in \mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, t) : \exists S_2 \subseteq V(G_2), \lambda_2(S_2 \cap \delta(G_2)) = L \wedge (G_2, S_2) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} \beta\}$$

are the same. It is easy to verify that in this case  $(G_1, Y_1) \approx (G_2, Y_2)$ . Thus the number of equivalence classes of  $\approx$  is upper bounded by a function of  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a set of minimum size representatives of the equivalence classes of  $\approx$  and let  $c_1 = \max_{\alpha \in \mathcal{S}} |V(G_\alpha)|$ .

Let  $G, Y$  and  $X$  be a graph and vertex sets as in the statement of the Lemma. We now define the sets  $B = \partial_G(X)$ ,  $R = (V(G) \setminus X) \cup B$  and the boundaried structures  $(G_X, Y_X)$  and  $(G_R, Y_R)$  as follows. The boundaried graphs  $G_X = G[X]$  and  $G_R = G[R]$  have boundary  $B$  with labels from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  such that  $G_X \oplus G_R = G$ . We define  $Y_X = Y \cap X$  and  $Y_R = Y \setminus X$ , such that  $(G, Y) = (G_X, Y_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ . Observe that  $|V(G_X)| = |X| > c_1$ .

Our algorithm has in its source code hard-wired a table that for every boundaried structure  $\alpha$  of type (graph, vertex set) with label set from  $\{1, \dots, t\}$  and  $|V(G_\alpha)| \leq 2c_1$  contains the  $\beta \in \mathcal{S}$  such that  $\beta \approx \alpha$ . The size of this table is a constant that depends only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . The algorithm looks up in the table and finds the representative  $(G'_X, Y'_X) \in$

$\mathcal{S}$  such that  $(G'_X, Y'_X) \approx (G_X, Y_X)$ . By construction we have  $|V(G'_X)| \leq c_1 < |V(G_X)|$ . The algorithm outputs the instance  $((G', Y'), k)$  where  $(G', Y') = (G'_X, Y'_X) \oplus (G_R, Y_R)$ . Since  $|V(G'_X)| < |V(G_X)|$  it follows that  $|V(G')| < |V(G)|$  and it remains to argue that the instances  $((G, Y), k)$  and  $((G', Y'), k)$  are equivalent.

Suppose  $((G, Y), k)$  is a YES-instance and let  $S \subseteq V(G)$ ,  $|S \cap Y| \geq k$  be such that  $(G, S) \models \psi$ . Let  $S_X = X \cap S$  and  $S_R = S \setminus X$ . Observe that  $(G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) = (G, S)$ ,  $S_X \cap Y_X \subseteq \delta(G_X)$ , and that  $|S_X \cap Y_X| + |S_R \cap Y_R| = |S \cap Y|$ . Let  $S'_X$  be a subset of  $V(G'_X)$  such that  $\lambda_{G'_X}(S'_X \cap \delta(G'_X)) = \lambda_{G_X}(S_X \cap \delta(G_X))$  and  $(G'_X, S'_X) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (G_X, S_X)$ . The existence of such a set  $S'_X$  is implied by property (3) of  $\approx$ . Since  $Y_X \subseteq \delta(G_X)$ ,  $Y'_X \subseteq \delta(G'_X)$ ,  $\Lambda_{G_X}(Y_X) = \Lambda_{G'_X}(Y'_X)$  and  $\Lambda_{G_X}(S_X \cap \delta(G_X)) = \Lambda_{G'_X}(S'_X \cap \delta(G'_X))$  we have that  $|S_X \cap Y_X| = |S'_X \cap Y'_X|$ .

Let  $S' = S'_X \cup S_R$  (formally  $S'_X$  and  $S_R$  are vertex sets of different graphs, so we set  $S' = ((G'_X, S'_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R))[2]$ ). Since  $S_R \cap \delta(G_R) = \emptyset$  we have that  $|S' \cap Y'| = |S'_X \cap Y'_X| + |S_R \cap Y_R| = |S_X \cap Y_X| + |S_R \cap Y_R| = |S \cap Y|$ . Thus, if  $|S \cap Y| \geq k$  then  $|S' \cap Y'| \geq k$ . Finally we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} & (G', S') \models \psi \\ \iff & (G'_X, S'_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \\ \iff & (G_X, S_X) \oplus (G_R, S_R) \models \psi \\ \iff & (G, S) \models \psi \iff \text{true}. \end{aligned}$$

This concludes the forward direction of the proof. The reverse direction is symmetric, but using property 4 of  $\approx$  rather than property 3.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.16.** *Let  $\Pi^\alpha$  be an annotated  $p$ -MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem. Then for every  $t$ , there is a constant  $c_2 > 0$  (depending only on  $\psi$ , and  $t$ ) and an algorithm that, given an instance  $((G, Y), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  with  $|X| > c_2 k$ , outputs, in  $O(|X|)$  steps, an equivalent instance  $((G, Y^*), k)$  of  $\Pi^\alpha$  such that  $|V^*| < |V|$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $|\partial_G(X)| = t$ . The algorithm starts by applying Lemma 5.14 to  $X$ , and producing an equivalent instance  $((G, Y'), k)$  where  $|Y' \cap X| \leq ak$ , for some constant  $a$  depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $Z = Y' \cap X$ . The next step is to apply Lemma 5.4 and construct a collection  $\mathcal{Q}$  of  $(4t+2)$ -protrusions such that  $X = \bigcup_{Q \in \mathcal{Q}} Q$ ,  $Z \cap Q \subseteq \partial_G(Q)$  for each  $Q \in \mathcal{Q}$ , and  $|\mathcal{Q}| \leq bk$  for some constant  $b$  depending only on  $|\psi|$  and  $t$ . Let  $c_1$  be the constant as guaranteed by Lemma 5.15 when applied on  $(8t+4)$ -protrusions, and set  $c_2 = c_1 \cdot b$ . By the pigeon-hole principle, some  $(4t+2)$ -protrusion  $Q$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$  has size at least  $|X|/bk > c_1$ . We apply Lemma 5.5 and obtain a  $(8t+4)$ -protrusion  $Q' \subseteq Q$  such that  $Z \cap Q' \subseteq \partial(Q')$  and  $c_1 < |Q'| \leq 2c_1$ . Finally we apply the algorithm of Lemma 5.15 on  $Q'$  and construct an equivalent instance of  $\Pi^\alpha$  as required.  $\square$

Now we show the following result.

**Lemma 5.17.** *Every annotated  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 1$ .*

of Lemma 5.17. According to the terminology that we introduced in Section 4, we have to prove that there exists an  $(f, 1)$ -protrusion replacement family  $\mathcal{A}$  for  $\Pi$ . Indeed, this directly follows from Lemma 5.16 if we define  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that for every  $r$ ,  $f(r)$  is the constant  $c_2$  in the statement of the same lemma.  $\square$

## 5.5 A protrusion replacement family based for problems that have FII

In the previous sections we gave reduction rules for annotated  $p$ -MIN/EQ/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems. These reduction rules, together with the results proved later in this article will give quadratic or cubic kernels for the problems in question. However, for many problem a linear kernel is possible. In this section we provide reduction rules for graph problems that have FII. These reduction rules will yield linear kernels. The main reduction lemma is the following.

**Lemma 5.18.** *Let  $\Pi$  be a problem that has FII. Then for every  $t \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , there exists a  $c \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  (depending on  $\Pi$  and  $t$ ), and an algorithm that, given an instance  $(G, k)$  of  $\Pi$  and a  $t$ -protrusion  $X$  in  $G$  with  $|X| > c$ , outputs, in  $O(|X|)$  steps, an equivalent instance  $(G^*, k^*)$  of  $\Pi$  where  $|V(G^*)| < |V(G)|$  and  $k^* \leq k$ .*

*Proof.* Recall that we denote by  $\mathcal{S}_{\subseteq[2t+1]}$  a set of (progressive) representatives for  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  restricted to boundaried graphs with label sets from  $\{1, \dots, 2t+1\}$ . Let

$$c = \max \left\{ |V(Y)| \mid Y \in \mathcal{S}_{\subseteq[2t+1]} \right\}.$$

Our algorithm has in its source code hard-wired a table that stores for each boundaried graph  $G_Y$  in  $\mathcal{F}_{\subseteq[2t+1]}$  on at most  $2c$  vertices a boundaried graph  $G'_Y \in \mathcal{S}_{\subseteq[2t+1]}$  and a constant  $\mu \leq 0$  such that  $G_Y \equiv_{\Pi} G'_Y$ , and specifically

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} : (G_Y \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \iff (G'_Y \oplus F, k + \mu) \in \Pi. \quad (30)$$

The existence of such a constant  $\mu \leq 0$  is guaranteed by the fact that  $\mathcal{S}_{\subseteq[2t+1]}$  is a set of progressive representatives.

We now apply Lemma 5.5 and find a  $(2t+1)$ -protrusion  $Y$  of  $G$  where  $c < |Y| \leq 2c$ . Split  $G$  into two boundaried graphs  $G_Y = G[Y]$  and  $G_R = G[(V(G) \setminus Y) \cup \partial(Y)]$  as follows. Both  $G_R$  and  $G_Y$  have boundary  $\partial(Y)$ , and since  $|\partial(Y)| \leq 2t+1$  we may label the boundaries of  $G_Y$  and  $G_R$  with labels from  $[2t+1]$  such that  $G = G_Y \oplus G_R$ . As  $c < |V(G_Y)| \leq 2c$  the algorithm can look up in its table and find a  $G'_Y \in \mathcal{S}_{\subseteq[2t+1]}$  and a constant  $\mu$  such that  $G_Y \equiv_{\Pi} G'_Y$  and  $G_Y, G'_Y$  and  $\mu$  satisfy Equation 30. The algorithm outputs

$$(G^*, k^*) = (G'_Y \oplus G_R, k + \mu).$$

Since  $|V(G'_Y)| \leq c < |V(G_Y)|$  and  $k^* \leq k + \mu \leq k$  it remains to argue that the instances  $(G, k)$  and  $(G^*, k^*)$  are equivalent. However, this is directly implied by Equation 30.  $\square$

We are now in position to prove Lemma.

**Lemma 5.19.** *Every parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  that has FII has the protrusion replacement property **A** for  $a = 0$ .*

*Proof.* According to the terminology that we introduced in Section 4, we have to prove that there exists an  $(f, 0)$ -protrusion replacement family  $\mathcal{A}$  for  $\Pi$ . Indeed, this directly follows from Lemma 5.18 if we define  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that for each  $r$ ,  $f(r)$  is the constant  $c$  in the statement of the same lemma.  $\square$

## 6 Combinatorial results

We start this section with some necessary definitions from graph theory.

### 6.1 Definitions from graph theory

Let  $e = \{u, v\}$  be an edge of a graph  $G = (V, E)$ . We obtain the graph  $G/e$  by *contracting*  $e$ . This means that the edge  $e$  is removed and its endpoints  $u, v$ , are merged into a new vertex  $v_e$ , such that each edge incident to either  $u$  or  $v$  is incident to  $v_e$ . Note that loops and multiple edges can appear as a result of edge contractions. More formally, let  $f$  be a function mapping  $u, v$  to  $v_e$  and all remaining vertices in  $V \setminus \{u, v\}$  to itself. The contraction of  $e$  results in a new graph  $G/e = (V', E')$ , where  $V' = (V \setminus \{u, v\}) \cup \{v_e\}$ ,  $E' = E \setminus \{e\}$ , and for every  $w \in V$ ,  $w' = f(w) \in V'$  is incident with an edge  $e' \in E'$  if and only if, the corresponding edge,  $e \in E$  is incident with  $w$  in  $G$ . When we have to remain in the class of simple graphs, loops and multiple edges resulting by contractions are deleted.

A graph  $H$  is a *minor* of a graph  $G$ , we write  $H \leq_{\text{mn}} G$ , if  $H$  can be obtained by contracting some edges of a subgraph of  $G$ . A graph class  $\mathcal{C}$  is *minor-closed* if every minor of every graph in  $\mathcal{C}$  also belongs to  $\mathcal{C}$ . A minor-closed graph class  $\mathcal{C}$  is  *$H$ -minor-free* if  $H \notin \mathcal{C}$ .

Given a graph  $G = (V, E)$ , we define the (normal) *distance* between two of its vertex sets  $X$  and  $Y$  as the shortest path distance between them, i.e. the minimum length of a path with endpoints in  $X$  and  $Y$ , and denote it by  $\mathbf{dist}_G(X, Y)$ . Given a set  $S \subseteq V$  of vertices, we denote by  $\mathbf{B}_G^r(S)$  the set of all vertices that are within distance at most  $r$  from some vertex of  $S$  in  $G$ .

We also need some notions from topological graph theory. All concepts that we do not define here can be found in the book [61]. The *Euler genus*  $\mathbf{eg}(\Sigma)$  of a nonorientable surface  $\Sigma$  is equal to the nonorientable genus  $\tilde{g}(\Sigma)$  (or the crosscap number). The Euler genus  $\mathbf{eg}(\Sigma)$  of an orientable surface  $\Sigma$  is  $2g(\Sigma)$ , where  $g(\Sigma)$  is the orientable genus of  $\Sigma$ . We say that a graph  $G$  is  $\Sigma$ -*embedded* if it is accompanied with an embedding of the graph into  $\Sigma$ . We also sometimes refer to an embedding as to a drawing of  $G$  in  $\Sigma$ . We treat edges and loops (in some proofs we will also allow loops and multiple edges) as

subsets of the surface  $\Sigma$  that are homeomorphic to the open interval  $(0, 1)$ . We define the endpoints of an edge  $e$  as the set of points of  $\Sigma$  that are in the closure of  $e$  but not in  $e$ . We call by *face* of a  $\Sigma$ -embedded graph  $G$  any connected component of  $\Sigma \setminus (E(G) \cup V(G))$ . All embeddings we consider are *2-cell embeddings*, which are embeddings with each face being homeomorphic to a disk.

Given a  $\Sigma$ -embedded graph  $G$ , we define its *radial graph*  $R_G$  as an embedded graph whose vertices are the vertices and the faces of  $G$  (each face  $f$  of  $G$  is represented by a point  $v_f$  in it). Roughly, each point  $v_f$  is adjacent to all vertices  $v$  incident to  $f$ . However, a face can be incident “several times” with the same vertex, and  $R_G$  can have multiple edges. For a point  $v_f$  in the face  $f$  and vertex  $v$  incident with  $f$ , we draw a maximum number of multiple edges in  $f$  such that for every pair of multiple edges  $e$  and  $e'$  the open disc bounded by these edges intersects  $G$ . Thus  $R_G$  is a bipartite multigraph, embedded in the same surface as  $G$ . Radial graphs provide an alternative way of viewing radial distance defined in Section 1: the radial distance of a pair of vertices in  $G$  corresponds to their normal distance in  $R_G$ . The relation between radial and normal metrics is captured by the following observation.

**Observation 3.** *If  $G$  is a  $\Sigma$ -embedded graph, then for every set  $S \subseteq V$  and every  $r \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , it holds that  $\mathbf{B}_G^r(S) \subseteq \mathbf{R}_G^{2r}(S)$ .*

## 6.2 Decomposition lemma for coverable problems

In this section we show the following decomposition result.

**Lemma 6.1.** *Every  $r$ -coverable problem has the protrusion decomposition property **B**.*

In order to prove Lemma 6.1, we have to show that every  $r$ -coverable problem satisfies combinatorial property **B**, i.e. admits a protrusion decomposition. Lemma 6.1 follows directly from the following lemma.

**Lemma 6.2.** *Let  $r$  be a positive integer and let  $G = (V, E)$  be a graph embedded in a surface  $\Sigma$  of Euler genus  $g$  that contains a set  $S$  of vertices,  $|S| \leq k$ , such that  $\mathbf{R}_G^r(S) = V$ . Then  $G$  has an  $(\alpha k, \beta)$ -protrusion decomposition for some constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  than depend only on  $r$  and  $g$ .*

Indeed, since a problem is  $r$ -coverable, there is a set  $S$ ,  $|S| \leq r \cdot k$ , such that  $\mathbf{R}_G^r(S) = V$ . Then combinatorial property **B** holds for  $c = r \cdot \max\{\alpha, \beta\}$ .

The rest of this subsection is devoted to the proof of Lemma 6.2. We start from a series of definitions and preliminary results. The first observation follows directly from the definition of protrusion decomposition.

**Observation 4.** *If  $G$  has an  $(\alpha k, \beta)$ -protrusion decomposition, then the same holds for every subgraph of  $G$ .*

The following proposition is a consequence of the result from [30] on the treewidth of graphs with bounded genus and diameter.

**Proposition 6.3.** *There exists function  $f_1 : \mathbb{Z}^+ \times \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that if  $G = (V, E)$  is a graph of Euler genus at most  $g$  such that  $V = \mathbf{B}_G^r(v)$  for some  $v \in V$ , then  $\mathbf{tw}(G) \leq f_1(r, g)$ .*

For the purposes of the proof of the next lemma, we permit the existence of multiple edges or loops in the embedding. Thus contracting edges can create multiple edges or loops which we do not delete. We call a face *trivial* if it is incident with at most two edges. We call a loop *empty* if it is the boundary of some face of  $G$ .

A *walk* of length  $\lambda$  in a multigraph  $G$  is a sequence  $\mathcal{C} = v_0 e_1 v_1 \cdots e_\lambda v_\lambda$  of alternating vertices and edges of  $G$  such that for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, \lambda\}$ , the vertices  $v_{i-1}$  and  $v_i$  are the endpoints of edge  $e_i$ . Thus an edge or a vertex can appear many times in a walk. If in the previous definition we additionally demand that  $v_0 = v_\lambda$ , then the walk is a *closed walk*.

We are ready to proceed with the proof of the lemma.

of Lemma 6.2. Let us note that by adding edges we do not increase distances between vertices. Thus by Observation 4, we may assume that all the faces in the embedding of  $G$  in  $\Sigma$  are *triangular*, meaning that they are incident with at most 3 edges, and that  $G$  is connected.

For every  $v \in S$ , we construct a breadth-first search tree  $T_v$  of depth at most  $r$  rooted at  $v$ . Because  $\mathbf{B}_G^r(S) = V$ , we have that every vertex of  $G$  is in some  $T_v$  for some  $v \in S$ . While some vertices can be within distance  $r$  from several vertices of  $S$ , by suitably modifying these trees, we may assume that every vertex is assigned to exactly one tree. That way, the vertex sets of the trees in  $\mathcal{T} = \{T_v \mid v \in S\}$  form a partition of  $V$ .

We denote by  $H$  the graph obtained from  $G$  after contracting all the edges of the trees in  $\mathcal{T}$ . Notice that  $V(H) = S$ , and as  $G$  is triangulated, every face of  $H$  is incident to at most 3 edges. We further simplify  $H$  as follows.

- As long as there are two edges incident with a trivial face, we delete one of them;
- As long as there is an empty loop, we delete it.

We denote the resulting graph by  $\tilde{H}$ . Again, every face of  $\tilde{H}$  is incident to at most 3 edges. Also  $V(\tilde{H}) = S$ .

Using Euler's formula for graphs embedded in surfaces, see e.g. [61, (4.4)], we derive that  $\tilde{H}$  has at most  $2k + 2g - 4$  faces and at most  $3k + 3g - 6$  edges. The edges of  $\tilde{H}$  can be seen as the edges of  $G$  which were not contracted or deleted during the construction of  $\tilde{H}$ . For every edge  $\tilde{e}$  of  $\tilde{H}$ , we denote by  $e$  the corresponding edge of  $G$ .

Let  $\tilde{e}$  be an edge of  $\tilde{H}$  with endpoints  $u, v \in S$ . Let  $x_u$  and  $x_v$  be the endpoints of the corresponding edge  $e$  in  $G$ . If  $u = v$ , then  $x_u$  and  $x_v$  are vertices of  $T_v$ . If  $u \neq v$ , then  $x_u$

is a vertex of  $T_u$  and  $x_v$  is a vertex of  $T_v$ . In both cases, there are unique paths  $P_{u,x_u}$  in  $T_u$  and  $P_{v,x_v}$  in  $T_v$  from  $u$  to  $x_u$ , and from  $v$  to  $x_v$  correspondingly. Each of these paths is of length at most  $r$ . We set  $P_e = P_{u,x_u} \cup \{e\} \cup P_{v,x_v}$ . Let us note that if  $u = v$ , then  $P_e$  is a closed walk, and if  $u \neq v$ , then it is a path. The length of  $P_e$  is at most  $2r + 1$ .

Let  $\tilde{G}$  be the graph obtained from  $G$  by contracting for every edge  $\tilde{e}$  of  $\tilde{H}$  all edges except  $e$  in the corresponding walk  $P_e$ . Thus besides  $S$ , the vertex set of  $\tilde{G}$  contains all vertices of  $G$  not covered by walks  $P_e$ . By construction,  $\tilde{G}[S] \supseteq \tilde{H}$ . We take the drawing of  $\tilde{G}$  in  $\Sigma$  and observe that  $\tilde{G}[S]$  contains the drawing of  $\tilde{H}$  in  $\Sigma$ . In the drawings of  $\tilde{G}$  and  $\tilde{H}$ , every face  $f$  of  $\tilde{H}$  covers a subset of vertices  $X_f$  of  $\tilde{G}$ . The set  $X_f$  is separated in  $\tilde{G}$  by the vertices incident to  $f$  from the remaining vertices of the graph  $\tilde{G}$ .

In  $\tilde{G}$ , every vertex  $v \notin S$  belongs to some set  $X_f$ . Thus, in  $G$ , every vertex is either in some  $X_f$  or belongs to some walk  $P_e$ . We define vertex subset  $R_0$  of  $G$ , as the union of the vertices of all walks corresponding to edges of  $\tilde{H}$ , i.e.

$$R_0 = \bigcup_{\tilde{e} \in E(\tilde{H})} V(P_e).$$

Sets  $R_0$  and  $X_f$ ,  $f \in \tilde{F}$ , have the following properties.

**Claim 1.**  $|R_0| \leq k + 2r(3k + 3g - 6)$ .

*of Claim.* There are at most  $3k + 3g - 6$  edges in  $\tilde{H}$  and each edge corresponds in  $G$  to a walk of length at most  $2r + 1$  connecting vertices of  $S$ . There are at most  $k$  vertices in  $S$  and thus  $|R_0| \leq k + 2r(3k + 3g - 6)$ .  $\square$

Let  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_\ell$  be the connected components of  $G \setminus R_0$ . We use the following properties of these connected components.

**Claim 2.**

$$|\{i : |N_G(C_i)| \geq 3\}| \leq 2|R_0| - 2g - 4, \quad (31)$$

$$\sum_{\{i : |N_G(C_i)| \geq 3\}} |N_G(C_i)| \leq 6|R_0| + 6g - 12. \quad (32)$$

*of Claim.* Make a new graph  $G'$  from  $G$  by deleting all components  $C_i$  such that  $|N(C_i)| < 3$ , contracting each component  $C_i$  with  $|N(C_i)| \geq 3$  to a single vertex, removing all edges between vertices in  $R_0$ , and removing double edges and self loops. Thus  $G'$  is bipartite simple graph and therefore every face of  $G'$  is incident to at least 4 edges. This fact, together with Euler's formula yields the claim. Here (31) counts the number of vertices of  $G'$  in the bipartition corresponding to components, while (32) counts the number of edges in  $G'$ .  $\square$



**Claim 3.** For each connected component  $C_i$  of  $G \setminus R_0$ , the treewidth of  $G[N[C_i]]$  is at most  $f_1(4r + 2, g)$ .

*Proof.* By construction of  $R_0$ , the component  $C_i$  is a subset of  $X_f$  for some face  $f$  of  $\tilde{H}$ . The face  $f$  is incident to at most 3 vertices, say  $x, y$  and  $z$ . In the graph  $\tilde{G}$ , the neighborhood of  $X_f$  is a subset of  $\{x, y, z\}$ . Hence in the graph  $G$ , the set  $N_G(X_f)$  is a subset of vertices which were contracted to  $x, y$ , or  $z$ . Thus, also for  $C_i$  it holds that  $N_G(C_i)$  is a subset of the vertices which were contracted to  $x, y$ , or  $z$ .

For any vertex  $u$  in  $C_i$  there is a path on at most  $r$  vertices starting in  $u$  and ending in  $S$ . This path must contain a vertex  $u'$  in  $N_G(C_i)$ , and from  $u'$  we can reach  $\{x, y, z\}$  in at most  $r$  steps. It follows that from any vertex in  $C_i$  we can reach  $\{x, y, z\}$  in at most  $2r$  steps. Since  $x$  can reach  $y$  and  $z$  in  $2r + 1$  steps it follows that  $N[C_i]$  is covered by a ball of radius  $4r + 2$  centered at  $x$ . Then by Proposition 6.3, the treewidth of  $G[N[C_i]]$  is at most  $f_1(4r + 2, g)$ .  $\square$

For each  $i \leq \ell$  define  $G_i = G[N(C_i)]$ . By Claim 3 we have that the treewidth of  $G_i$  is at most  $t = f_1(4r + 2, g)$ . Next we claim the following.

**Claim 4.** For every  $i$ , there exists a set  $Y_i \subseteq V(G_i)$  such that

- $N_G(C_i) \subseteq Y_i$ ,
- $|Y_i| \leq 2|N_G(C_i)|(t + 1)$ ,
- Every connected component of  $G_i \setminus Y_i$  has at most  $2(t + 1)$  neighbors in  $Y_i$ .

*of Claim.* The proof of this claim is almost identical to the proof of Lemma 5.4. Here the role of the set  $Z$  is given to  $N_G(C_i)$ . We compute a nice tree decomposition of  $G_i$  and mark all upper most forget nodes of the decomposition forgetting vertices of  $N(C_i)$ . We keep marking each lowest common ancestor of marked nodes, as long as possible. The vertices contained in all marked bags form the set  $Y_i$ .  $\square$

We use Claim 4 to find sets  $Y_i$  for every  $G_i$  and define the set

$$R = R_0 \cup \bigcup_{\{i : |N(C_i)| \geq 3\}} Y_i.$$

We partition the remaining set of vertices  $V(G) \setminus R$  into sets  $Q_1, Q_2, \dots, Q_q$ , where every  $Q_i$  is the union of connected components of  $G \setminus R$  with the same neighborhood in  $R$ . We claim that  $\mathcal{P} = (R, \{Q_i\}_{1 \leq i \leq q})$  is the desired  $(\alpha k, \beta)$ -protrusion decomposition of  $G$ .

First, we have the following bound on  $|R|$ .

$$|R| \leq |R_0| + \sum_{\{i : |N(C_i)| \geq 3\}} |Y_i| \leq |R_0| + 2(t + 1) \sum_{\{i : |N(C_i)| \geq 3\}} |N(C_i)| = O(k)$$

Here the last bound follows from (32) together with the bound of Claim 1 that  $|R_0| = O(k)$

There are at most  $|R|$  sets  $Q_i$  such that  $|N(Q_i)| = 1$ . By Euler's formula there are at most  $3|R| + 3g - 6$  sets  $Q_i$  with exactly two neighbors in  $R$ . Again, by Euler's formula, exactly as in (31), the number of sets  $Q_i$  with at least three neighbors in  $R$  is at most  $2|R| + 2g - 4$ . Hence  $q \leq 6|R| + 5g = O(k)$ .

By Claim 4, we have that  $|N(Q_i)| \leq 2(t+1)$  for every  $i$ . Furthermore, for every  $i$  we have that each connected component of  $G[Q_i]$  is in fact  $C_j$  for some  $j$ , and hence by Claim 3,  $G[Q_i]$  has treewidth at most  $t$ . Hence  $G[N[Q_i]]$  is a protrusion with treewidth at most  $3t+2$  and boundary size at most  $2(t+1)$ . This completes the proof of Lemma 6.2.  $\square$   $\square$

### 6.3 Decomposition lemma for quasi-coverable problems

In this section we prove the following decomposition lemma.

**Lemma 6.4.** *Every  $r$ -quasi-coverable problem has the weak protrusion decomposition property  $\mathbf{B}^*$ .*

Given the definition of  $r$ -quasi-coverability, Lemma 6.4 is a direct consequence of the following graph-theoretic result.

**Lemma 6.5.** *There exist functions  $\zeta_1$  and  $\zeta_2$  such that the following holds: Let  $r, g, p$ , and  $k$  be non-negative integers and let  $G = (V, E)$  be a graph embedded in a surface  $\Sigma$  of Euler genus  $g$  such that*

- *$G$  contains a set  $S$  of vertices, where  $|S| \leq k$  and  $\mathbf{tw}(G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S)) \leq r$ , and*
- *for every  $\lambda \leq \zeta_1(r, g)$ ,  $G$  has no  $\lambda$ -protrusion of size at least  $p$ .*

*Then  $G$  has a  $(ck, c)$ -protrusion decomposition, where  $c = \zeta_2(g, r, p)$ .*

Indeed, we set  $g = r$  in Lemma 6.5. Then combinatorial property  $\mathbf{B}^*$  holds for  $c' = \zeta_1(r, g)$  and  $g(x) = \zeta_2(r, r, x)$ .

The rest of this section is devoted to the proof of Lemma 6.5. Let us outline first the main ideas of the proof. Let  $S$  be a subset of  $V$  of size  $k$  such that removal of balls of radius  $r$  (in radial distance) around vertices of  $S$  from  $G$ , results in a graph of treewidth at most  $r$ . We enlarge the set  $S$  by adding at most  $k$  new vertices and we want the new set  $S'$  to satisfy the following property:

- Balls of radius  $\mu$  (in radial distance) around vertices of  $S'$  cover all vertices of  $G$ , where  $\mu$  is a constant depending on  $r, p$  and  $g$ .

If we succeed to find such a set  $S'$ , then we can use Lemma 6.2 to obtain a  $(ck, c)$ -protrusion decomposition of  $G$  for some constant  $c$ . To find the required set  $S'$ , we show how to construct a superset  $S'$  of  $S$  of size at most  $2k$ , such that for every vertex  $v$  at distance  $\geq 2\mu$  from  $S'$  in the graph  $G \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^\mu(v)$  there are at most two connected components containing vertices of  $S'$ . This construction is given in Lemma 6.6. To prove that  $S'$  is the required set, we have to prove that every vertex of  $G$  is at radial distance  $\mu$  from some vertex of  $S'$ . The proof of this fact is based on the proof that in graphs embedded in a surface of bounded genus, two connected sets embedded at a large radial distance from each other and non-separable by “small” separators, form an obstruction for having “small” treewidth (Lemma 6.11). Because the treewidth of the graph  $G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S')$  is at most  $r$ , we obtain that if there is a vertex  $v$  at distance  $> \mu$  from  $S'$ , then a ball of radius  $p$  around this vertex should be separated from the remaining graph by a small separator. This yields that  $G$  has a protrusion containing a ball of radius  $p$  around  $v$ , and thus of size at least  $p$ . But by the assumption of the lemma, there is no such a protrusion. Thus every vertex  $v$  is within distance  $\leq \mu$  from  $S'$ .

We proceed with the proof of Lemma 6.5.

**Constructing  $S'$  from  $S$ .** Let  $G$  be a graph,  $H$  be a subgraph of  $G$  and  $S \subseteq V(G)$ . An  $S$ -component of  $H$  is a connected component of  $H$  containing some of the vertices of  $S$ .

**Lemma 6.6.** *Let  $\mu$  be a positive integer,  $G = (V, E)$  be a connected graph, and  $S$  be a subset of  $V$ . Then there is a set  $S' \supseteq S$  such that*

- $|S'| \leq \max\{2|S| - 2, 1\}$ , and
- for every  $v \in V \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^{2\mu}(S')$ , graph  $G \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^\mu(v)$  has at most two  $S'$ -components.

*Proof.* We use induction on  $|S|$ . As the lemma is obvious when  $|S| \leq 2$ , we assume that  $|S| = k > 2$  and that the lemma holds for all sets  $S$  of smaller sizes. Suppose that  $G$  contains a vertex  $u$  such that  $\text{dist}_G(u, S) \geq 2\mu + 1$  and  $G^- = G \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^\mu(u)$  has at least three  $S$ -components. (If there is no such a vertex  $u$ , we are done.) We denote these components by  $C_1, \dots, C_h$ ,  $h \geq 3$ , and we denote by  $C_{h+1}, \dots, C_\ell$ , the connected components of  $G^-$  not containing vertices from  $S$ . For  $i \in \{1, \dots, \ell\}$ , we define

$$S_i = (S \cap V(C_i)) \cup \{u\},$$

and

$$G_i = G[\mathbf{B}_G^\mu(u) \cup V(C_i)].$$

Notice that each  $S_i$  is a vertex subset of the connected graph  $G_i$  and that  $1 \leq |S_i| \leq |S| - 1 = k - 1$ . This means that the induction hypothesis holds for  $G_i$  and  $S_i$ . Thus for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, \ell\}$ , there is a set  $S'_i \supseteq S_i$  such that  $|S'_i| \leq \max\{2|S_i| - 2, 1\}$ , and

$$\forall v \in V(G_i) \setminus \mathbf{B}_{G_i}^{2\mu}(S'_i), \text{ graph } G_i \setminus \mathbf{B}_{G_i}^\mu(v) \text{ has at most two } S'_i\text{-components.} \quad (33)$$

We now set  $S' = \bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq \ell} S'_i$ . Clearly,  $S' \supseteq S$ . Notice also that  $u$  appears in every  $S'_i$ , while each other vertex of  $S'$  appears in exactly one of  $S'_1, \dots, S'_h$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
|S'| &= \left( \sum_{i=1}^h |S'_i| \right) - (h-1) \\
&\leq 2 \cdot \left( \sum_{i=1}^h |S_i| \right) - 2h - h + 1 \\
&= 2 \cdot \left( \sum_{i=1}^h |S_i \setminus \{u\}| \right) + 2h - 3h + 1 \\
&= 2|S| - h + 1 \leq 2k - 2.
\end{aligned}$$

(For the last inequality, we use the assumption that  $h \geq 3$ .)

We claim that for every  $v \in V \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^{2\mu}(S')$ , the graph  $G \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^\mu(v)$  has at most two  $S'$ -components. Without loss of generality, let us assume that  $v$  belongs to the connected component  $C_1$  of  $G^- = G \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^\mu(u)$ . By (33), in the corresponding graph  $G_1$ , the subgraph  $G_1 \setminus \mathbf{B}_{G_1}^\mu(v)$  has at most two  $S'_1$ -components, where  $S'_1 = V(G_1) \cap S'$ , and one of these components contains  $u$ . The distance from  $u$  to  $v$  is at least  $2\mu + 1$  and hence the whole ball  $\mathbf{B}_{G_1}^\mu(v)$  is contained in  $C_1$ . Therefore every vertex  $w \in S' \setminus S_1$  is connected with  $u$  in  $G$  by a path avoiding  $\mathbf{B}_G^\mu(v)$ . Hence,  $G \setminus \mathbf{B}_G^\mu(v)$  has at most two  $S'$ -components.  $\square$

**Treewidth obstructions.** The main result of this subsection is Lemma 6.11 which can be seen as an extension of the following result: if a graph of bounded genus has two vertices which are far apart (in the radial distance) and cannot be separated by a small separator, then the treewidth of the graph is large. However for the purposes of the proof, we need an extension of this result for two “radially” connected and non-separable vertex sets.

To prove Lemma 6.11 we need several combinatorial results. We use the following proposition from [51] (see also [61, Proposition 4.2.7]).

**Proposition 6.7.** *Let  $G$  be a graph embedded in a surface  $\Sigma$  of Euler genus  $g$ ,  $x, y \in V(G)$ , and let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a collection of pairwise internally vertex disjoint paths from  $x$  to  $y$  such that no two of them are homotopic. Then,  $|\mathcal{P}| \leq h(g)$ , where*

$$h(g) = \begin{cases} g + 1 & \text{if } g \leq 1 \\ 3g - 2 & \text{if } g \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

Let  $G = (V, E)$  a graph and let  $X, Y$ , and  $Z$  be pairwise disjoint subsets of  $V$ . We say that  $Y$  *separates*  $X$  and  $Z$  if  $X$  and  $Z$  are in different connected components of  $G \setminus Y$ . We say that  $Y$  is a *minimal*  $(X, Z)$ -*separator* if no subset of  $Y$  separates  $X$  and  $Z$ . For  $S \subseteq V$ , we say that  $S$  is *connected in*  $G$  if  $G[S]$  is a connected graph.

The following properties of minimal separators of connected vertex sets in triangulated graphs are important for obtaining treewidth obstructions.

**Lemma 6.8.** *Let  $G$  be a triangulated graph embedded in a surface  $\Sigma$  with Euler genus  $g$  and let  $S$  be a minimal separator for connected vertex subsets  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  of  $G$ . Then  $S$  has at most  $h(g)$  connected components.*

*Proof.* Let  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_r$  be the connected components of  $G \setminus S$ . Without loss of generality, we assume that  $C_1$  contains  $X_1$  and  $C_2$  contains  $X_2$ . For each component  $C_i$  we select a vertex  $x_i \in C_i$ ,  $i \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ . We call the vertices in  $S$  *separation vertices* and the vertices  $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_r\}$  *satellite vertices*. From  $G$  we construct graph  $H$  by exhaustively contracting or removing edges according to the following rules:

- We contract all edges except the edges with one endpoint being a satellite vertex and the other endpoint a separation vertex.
- We delete loops which are not surface separating, and as long as possible, we delete one of the multiple edges incident with a trivial faces, i.e. face incident with two edges.

Notice that every connected component  $C_i$  is contracted to a single vertex  $x_i$  and every connected component of  $G[S]$  is also contracted to a single vertex. In addition, each application of the above rules results in a triangulated graph, thus  $H$  is triangulated. Let  $S'$  be the vertices of  $H$  resulted in contracting of  $G[S]$ . The vertices of  $S'$  form a minimal  $(x_1, x_2)$ -separator in  $H$ , and thus each of  $x_i$ ,  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ , is adjacent to all vertices of  $S'$ . Hence there exist  $|S'|$  internally vertex disjoint paths of length two from  $x_1$  to  $x_2$  in  $H$ . Because  $H$  is triangulated, these  $(x, y)$ -paths are pairwise non-homotopic, otherwise some edge in  $H[S']$  could be further contracted or deleted. Combining this with Proposition 6.7, we deduce that  $|S'| \leq h(g)$ . The lemma now follows by observing that each connected component of  $S$  shrinks to a single vertex of  $S'$ , therefore  $S$  has  $|S'| \leq h(g)$  connected components.  $\square$

We say that two vertex subsets  $X, Y$  of graph  $G$  *touch* if either  $X \cap Y \neq \emptyset$  or there exist an edge of  $G$  with one endpoint in  $X$  and the other in  $Y$ . A *bramble* of  $G$  is a collection  $\mathcal{B}$  of mutually touching connected subsets of  $V(G)$ . The *order* of a bramble  $\mathcal{B}$  is the minimum size of a set  $S$  that intersects all its elements. The *bramble number* of  $G$  is the maximum order a bramble of  $G$  may have.

The following min-max characterization of treewidth was proved in [69].

**Proposition 6.9.** *The treewidth of a graph is one less than its bramble number.*

We define functions  $f_1, f_2$  such that  $f_1(x, y) = (x+1)y$  and  $f_2(x, y) = x \binom{(x+1)y}{x+1} + 1$ . The following lemma can be seen as a generalization of [69, (3.2)].

**Lemma 6.10.** *Let  $q, t$  be non-negative integers and let  $r_1 = f_1(t, q)$  and  $r_2 = f_2(t, q)$ . Let  $G$  be a graph and let  $\mathcal{X} = \{X_1, \dots, X_{r_1}\}$  be a collection of mutually disjoint connected vertex sets of  $G$ . Let also  $\mathcal{Y} = \{Y_1, \dots, Y_{r_2}\}$  be a collection of mutually disjoint vertex sets of  $G$ , each with at most  $q$  connected components and such that for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, r_1\}$  and  $j \in \{1, \dots, r_2\}$ ,  $X_i \cap Y_j \neq \emptyset$ . Then  $\text{tw}(G) \geq t$ .*

*Proof.* For every set  $Y_j$ ,  $j \in \{1, \dots, r_2\}$ , we select its connected component  $Y'_j$  intersecting the largest number of sets from  $\mathcal{X}$ . Because every  $Y_j$  has at most  $q$  connected components, set  $Y'_j$  intersects at least  $t + 1 = r_1/q$  sets from  $\mathcal{X}$ .

Let now  $R$  be the intersection graph of sets  $\mathcal{X}$  and  $\mathcal{Y}' = \{Y'_1, \dots, Y'_{r_2}\}$ . Then  $R$  is a bipartite graph with bipartition  $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}')$ , and every vertex from  $\mathcal{Y}'$  has degree  $\geq t + 1$  in  $R$ . We remove edges from  $R$  such that in the resulting graph all vertices of  $\mathcal{Y}'$  have degree exactly  $t + 1$ . In the new graph the vertices from  $\mathcal{Y}'$  have at most

$$\binom{|\mathcal{X}|}{t+1} = \binom{(t+1)q}{t+1}$$

distinct neighbourhoods in  $\mathcal{X}$ . Because

$$|\mathcal{Y}'| = |\mathcal{Y}| = t \binom{(t+1)q}{t+1} + 1,$$

we deduce that there should be at least  $t + 1$  vertices of  $\mathcal{Y}'$  with the same neighbourhood in  $\mathcal{X}$ . Let  $I_{\mathcal{Y}}$  be the indices of these vertices in  $\mathcal{Y}$  and let  $I_{\mathcal{X}}$  be the indices of their neighbours in  $\mathcal{X}$ .

It follows that for every  $(i, j) \in I_{\mathcal{X}} \times I_{\mathcal{Y}}$ ,  $X_i \cap Y'_j \neq \emptyset$ , and, as both  $X_i$  and  $Y'_j$  are connected,  $X_i \cup Y'_j$  is also a connected set. Moreover, because  $|I_{\mathcal{X}}| = |I_{\mathcal{Y}}| = t + 1$ , it follows that for every set  $S$  of  $t$  vertices in  $G$ , there are  $i \in I_{\mathcal{X}}$  and  $j \in I_{\mathcal{Y}}$  such that  $S \cap (X_i \cup Y'_j) = \emptyset$ . We can now conclude that the collection  $\{X_i \cup Y'_j \mid (i, j) \in I_{\mathcal{X}} \times I_{\mathcal{Y}}\}$  is a bramble in  $G$  of order  $t + 1$ . Therefore, the bramble number of  $G$  is at least  $t + 1$  and the lemma follows from Proposition 6.9.  $\square$

Let  $G$  be a graph embedded in some surface  $\Sigma$ . We define the *radial completion* of  $G$  as the graph obtained from drawing of  $G$  in  $\Sigma$  together with its radial graph  $R_G$ . We denote the radial completion of  $G$  by  $W_G$ . Let us remark that  $W_G$  is triangulated and that  $R_G$  is a spanning subgraph of  $W_G$ . Notice that every two adjacent vertices in  $W_G$  have some common neighbour in  $R_G$ . This implies the following observation.

**Observation 5.** *Let  $G$  be a graph embedded in some surface  $\Sigma$ . Then for every pair  $x, y \in V(R_G)$ , it holds that  $\mathbf{dist}_{W_G}(x, y) \leq \mathbf{dist}_{R_G}(x, y) \leq 2 \cdot \mathbf{dist}_{W_G}(x, y)$ .*

Loosely speaking, the following lemma says that in a graph of small treewidth which is embedded on a surface of fixed genus, every two connected sets will be either radially close or will be separated by a small set. Let  $h$  be the function from Lemma 6.8, and  $f_1, f_2$  be the functions defined before Lemma 6.10.

**Lemma 6.11.** *Let  $G$  be a graph embedded in a surface  $\Sigma$  of Euler genus  $g$ ,  $t$  be a positive integer, and  $C, Z, Z_1, C_1$  be disjoint subsets of  $V(W_G)$  such that*

- $C$  and  $C_1$  are connected in  $W_G$ ,
- $Z$  separates  $C$  from  $Z_1 \cup C_1$  and  $Z_1$  separates  $C \cup Z$  from  $C_1$  in  $W_G$ ,

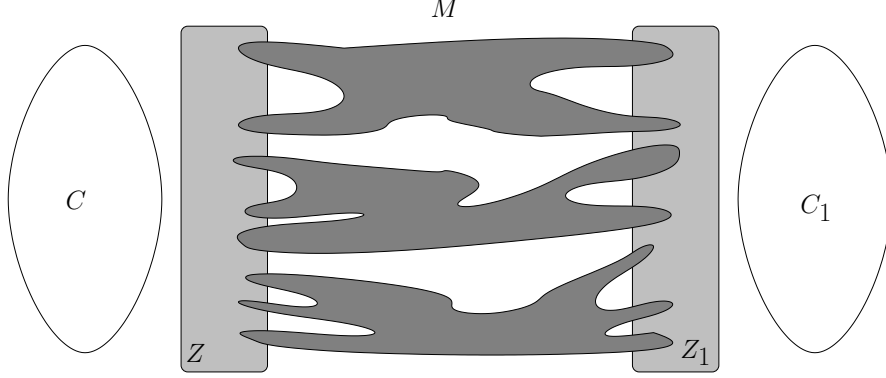


Figure 1: A visualization of the statement of Lemma 6.11.

- $\text{dist}_{W_G}(Z, Z_1) \geq 3 \cdot f_2(t + 1, h(g)) + 3$ , and
- $G$  contains  $f_1(t + 1, h(g))$  internally vertex-disjoint paths from  $C \cap V(G)$  to  $C_1 \cap V(G)$ .

Then  $\text{tw}(G[V(M) \cap V(G)]) > t$ , where  $M$  is the union of all connected components of  $W_G \setminus (Z \cup Z_1)$  that have at least one neighbor in  $Z$  and at least one neighbor in  $Z_1$ . (See Fig. 1.)

*Proof.* We set  $\mu = f_1(t + 1, h(g))$  and  $\lambda = f_2(t + 1, h(g))$ . Let  $P_1, \dots, P_\mu$  be internally vertex-disjoint paths in  $G$  from  $C \cap V(G)$  to  $C_1 \cap V(G)$ . Each of these paths  $P_i$  contains at least one subpath with one endpoint in  $Z$  and the other in  $Z_1$ , and with all internal vertices in  $M$ . We denote by  $P'_1, \dots, P'_{\mu'}$  the set of such subpaths. Then  $\mu' \geq \mu$ .

For  $j \in \{1, \dots, 3\lambda + 2\}$ , let  $A_j$  be the set of all vertices of  $W_G$  that are within distance exactly  $j$  from  $Z$  and belonging to  $M$ . Notice that each  $A_j$  is a  $(Z, Z_1)$ -separator and thus also a  $(C, C_1)$ -separator of  $W_G$ . Clearly, each  $A_j$  contains as a subset a minimal  $(C, C_1)$ -separator  $Y_j$  of  $W_G$ . As each  $Y_j$  is also a  $(Z, Z_1)$ -separator, it should contain at least one internal vertex of every path in  $P'_1, \dots, P'_{\mu'}$ . Moreover, by its definition,  $A_j$  should be a subset of  $M$ .

As  $W_G$  is triangulated, by Lemma 6.8, each  $W_G[Y_j]$  contains at most  $h(g)$  connected components. Recall that, by the definition of  $W_G$ , for each vertex  $x \in V(W_G) \setminus V(G)$ , the graph induced by its neighborhood is a connected subgraph of  $G$ . Using this fact, we obtain that  $Y_j^+ = \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^1(Y_j) \cap V(G)$  has also at most  $h(g)$  connected components in  $G$  for  $j \in \{2, \dots, 3\lambda + 1\}$ .

Let  $I = \{1, \dots, \lambda\}$  and notice that, for any two distinct  $h, l \in I$ ,  $Y_{3h}^+$  and  $Y_{3l}^+$  are vertex-disjoint subgraphs of  $G[V(M) \cap V(G)]$ . For  $j \in \{1, \dots, \mu'\}$ , we define  $P''_j$  as the path obtained from  $P'_j$  after removing its endpoints. Observe now that  $P''_1, \dots, P''_{\mu'}$  are connected vertex-disjoint subgraphs of  $G[V(M) \cap V(G)]$ , and each of these graphs

intersect all graphs  $Y_{3j}^+$ . Applying Lemma 6.10 for  $\mu$  graphs from  $\{P_1'', \dots, P_{\mu'}''\}$  and  $\lambda$  graphs from  $\{Y_{3j}^+ \mid j \in I\}$ , we deduce that  $\mathbf{tw}(G[V(M) \cap V(G)]) \geq t + 1 > t$  and the lemma follows.  $\square$

**Final step.** To conclude the proof of the main result of this section, we need the last lemma. The following lemma essentially says that if  $(G, k)$  is a YES-instance of a quasi-coverable problem  $\Pi$  where  $G$  has no big protrusions, then  $G$  has an  $r$ -dominating set of size  $O(k)$  for some  $r$  that depends only on  $\Pi$  and  $g$  and therefore  $(G, k)$  can be treated as a YES-instance of a coverable problem.

We define function  $f_3(x, y) = 2 \cdot f_1(x + 1, h(y + 1))$  where  $h$  is the function of Lemma 6.8, and  $f_1$  is the function defined before Lemma 6.10.

**Lemma 6.12.** *Let  $G = (V, E)$  be a graph embedded in a surface  $\Sigma$  of Euler genus  $g$  and let  $p, t$ , and  $r$  be non-negative integers such that*

- *there exists a set  $S \subseteq V$  such that  $\mathbf{tw}(G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S)) \leq t$ ;*
- *for  $\lambda \leq f_3(t, g)$ , all  $\lambda$ -protrusions of  $G$  are of size less than  $p$ .*

*Then there exist a set  $S' \subseteq V$  and a constant  $\mu$  (depending on  $p, g$ , and  $r$  only) such that*

- *$|S'| \leq 2|S|$ , and*
- *$\mathbf{R}_G^\mu(S') = V$ .*

*Proof.* To prove the lemma, we prove a slightly different statement: Under the assumptions of the lemma, there is a set  $S' \subseteq V(W_G)$  such that  $|S'| \leq 2|S|$  and  $\mathbf{B}_{W_G}^\mu(S') = V(W_G)$ . Then the statement of the lemma can be deduced from this alternative statement by constructing set  $S'_{\text{new}}$  as follows: first set  $S'_{\text{new}} \leftarrow S'$  and then replace each vertex in  $S'$  that does not belong to  $V(G)$  with one of its neighbors from  $V(G)$ . It remains to observe that  $\mathbf{R}_G^{\mu+1}(S'_{\text{new}}) \supseteq \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^\mu(S')$ .

We put  $\mu = 2p + 2r + 2 + 2\mu'$ , where  $\mu' = 3 \cdot f_2(t + 1, h(g)) + 3$ , and proceed with the proof of the above alternative statement. We first apply Lemma 6.6 for  $W_G$  and  $S$  to obtain a set  $S' \supseteq S$  of vertices, where  $|S'| \leq 2|S|$  and such that for every  $v \in W_G \setminus \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^{2\mu}(S')$ , graph  $W_G \setminus \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^\mu(v)$  has at most two  $S'$ -components. If  $\mathbf{B}_{W_G}^{2\mu}(S') = V(W_G)$ , then we are done. Otherwise, let  $v \in W_G \setminus \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^{2\mu}(S')$ . Let  $C_1, C_2$  be  $S'$ -components of  $W_G \setminus \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^\mu(v)$  (one of these components can be an empty set), and let  $S_i = C_i \cap S'$ ,  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ . We also define subgraphs of  $W_G$  as follows,  $W_1 = W_G \setminus C_2$  and  $W_2 = W_G \setminus C_1$ .

We claim that at least one of the sets  $C_i$ ,  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ , cannot be separated in  $W_i$  from  $C = \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^{2p}(v)$  by a separator of size at most  $\lambda/2$ . Indeed, if it was the case, then in  $W_G$ ,  $C$  is separable from  $C_1 \cup C_2$ , and thus from  $\mathbf{B}_{W_G}^{2r}(S') \subseteq C_1 \cup C_2$  by a separator of size at most  $\lambda$ . By Observation 5, this means that in  $G$ , vertices  $R_G^p(v)$  can be separated from  $\mathbf{R}_G^r(S')$  by a separator of size at most  $\lambda$ . Because  $\mathbf{tw}(G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S')) \leq t$  this yields that



there is a  $\lambda$ -protrusion in  $G$  containing  $\mathbf{R}_G^p(v)$ . But  $|\mathbf{R}_G^p(v)| \geq p$ , and thus the size of this protrusion is at least  $p$  in  $G$ , which contradicts to the assumption of the lemma.

Without loss of generality, let us assume that  $C_1$  is a  $S'$ -component of  $W_G \setminus \mathbf{B}_{W_G}^\mu(v)$  that cannot be separated in  $W_1$  from  $C$  by a separator of size  $\lambda/2$ . By Menger's theorem, in graph  $W_1$  there are  $\lambda/2$  internally vertex-disjoint paths from  $C$  to  $C_1$ . We define  $Z$  as the set of vertices at distance exactly  $2p + 1$  from  $v$  in  $W_1$ , and  $Z_1$  as  $N_{W_1}(C_1)$ . Then  $Z$  separates  $C$  from  $Z_1 \cup C_1$  and  $Z_1$  separates  $C_1$  from  $Z \cup C$ . The distance in  $W_1$  between  $Z$  and  $Z_1$  is at least  $\mu'$ . Let  $M$  be the union of connected components of  $W_1 \setminus (Z_1 \cup Z_2)$  having at least one neighbour in  $Z$  and  $Z_1$ . By Lemma 6.11, the treewidth of the subgraph  $G_M$  of  $G$  induced by  $M \cap V(G)$  is more than  $t$ . On the other hand, every vertex of  $M$  is at distance more than  $r + 1$  in  $W_G$ , and thus at radial distance at least  $r + 1$  in  $G$ , from each vertex of  $S'$ , and thus of  $S$ . Hence  $\text{tw}(G_M) \leq \text{tw}(G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S))$ , which is at most  $t$  by the assumption of the lemma. This contradiction concludes the proof of the lemma.  $\square$

of Lemma 6.5. By applying Lemma 6.12 for  $r = t$  and  $\zeta_1 = f_3$ , we have that  $G$  contains a set of vertices  $S'$  where  $|S'| \leq 2k$  such that  $\mathbf{R}_G^\mu(S') = V(G)$ , where  $\mu$  is the constant of Lemma 6.12. But then by Lemma 6.2,  $G$  has a  $(ck, c)$ -protrusion decomposition for some  $c$  depending on  $g, r$ , and  $p$  as required.  $\square$

## 7 Criteria for proving FII

To apply Theorem 1.3, to prove that a specific parameterized problem on graphs admits a linear kernel we have to show that it has FII. This property is not always easy to prove directly. In this section, we give some general criteria for establishing FII. These tools are used in Section 8. Early results that establish that problems have FII were obtained by Bodlaender and de Fluiter [11, 17, 26]; another criterion for FII was given by van Rooij [71, Section 11.2].

### 7.1 Strong monotonicity

We first give a sufficient condition which implies that a large class of  $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems has FII. We prove it here for vertex versions of  $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems. By  $\mathcal{U}_I$  we denote the set of all boundaried structures of type (graph, vertex set), whose boundaried graph has label set  $I$ .

Let  $\Pi$  be a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem definable by some sentence  $\psi$ . We say that a boundaried structure  $(G', S')$  whose boundaried graph has label set  $I$  is  $\psi$ -feasible for some boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$  if there exist some  $S \subseteq V(G)$  such that  $(G \oplus G', S \cup S') \models \psi$ . For a boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$ , we define the function  $\zeta_G : \mathcal{U}_I \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+ \cup \{\infty\}$  as follows. For a structure  $\alpha = (G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$  we set

$$\zeta_G(\alpha) = \begin{cases} \min\{|S| \mid S \subseteq V(G) \wedge (G \oplus G', S \cup S') \models \psi\} & \text{if } \alpha \text{ is } \psi\text{-feasible for } G \\ \infty & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (34)$$

Similarly, for  $\Pi$   $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problems we define

$$\zeta_G(\alpha) = \begin{cases} \max\{|S| \mid S \subseteq V(G) \wedge (G \oplus G', S \cup S') \models \psi\} & \text{if } \alpha \text{ is } \psi\text{-feasible for } G \\ -\infty & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

**Definition 7.1.** A  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem  $\Pi$  is strongly monotone if there exists a function  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that the following condition is satisfied. For every boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$ , there exists a subset  $W \subseteq V(G)$  such that for every  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$  such that  $\zeta_G(G', S')$  is finite, it holds that  $(G \oplus G', W \cup S') \models \psi$  and  $|W| \leq \zeta_G(G', S') + f(|I|)$ .

For completeness we give below the maximization counterpart of Definition 7.1.

**Definition 7.2.** A  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem  $\Pi$  is strongly monotone if there exists a function  $f : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that the following condition is satisfied. For every boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$  there exists a subset  $W \subseteq V(G)$  such that for every  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$  such that  $\zeta_G(G', S')$  is finite, it holds that  $(G \oplus G', W \cup S') \models \psi$  and  $|W| \geq \zeta_G(G', S') - f(|I|)$ .

## 7.2 FII for $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$ problems

**Lemma 7.3.** Every strongly monotone  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  and every strongly monotone  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem has FII.

*Proof.* We prove the lemma for a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem; the proof for a  $p$ -MAX-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem is similar. Let  $\Pi$  be a strongly monotone  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem and let  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Let  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, I)$  be a set containing a representative (a boundaried structure of arity two) for each equivalence class of  $\equiv_{\sigma_\psi}$  with the minimum number of vertices in the graph of a structure. For brevity we denote  $\mathbf{MinRep}(\psi, I)$  by  $\mathcal{S}$ . From Lemma 3.2 we know that  $|\mathcal{S}|$  is bounded by some function of  $|\psi|$  and  $|I|$ .

Consider a boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$  and define  $\zeta_G^{\mathcal{S}} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+ \cup \{\infty\}$  to be the function  $\zeta_G$  with domain restricted to  $\mathcal{S}$ . Let  $L_G^{\mathcal{S}} = \{\zeta_G^{\mathcal{S}}(\alpha) \mid \alpha \in \mathcal{S}\} \setminus \{\infty\}$ . We first argue that if  $f$  is the function in the definition of the strong monotonicity of  $\Pi$  (i.e., Definition 7.1) and  $L_G^{\mathcal{S}} \neq \emptyset$ , then

$$\max L_G^{\mathcal{S}} - \min L_G^{\mathcal{S}} \leq f(|I|) \quad (35)$$

Since  $\Pi$  is strongly monotone, there exists  $W \subseteq V(G)$  such that for every  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$  where  $\zeta_G(G', S') \neq \infty$ , it holds that

$$(G \oplus G', W \cup S') \models \psi \text{ and} \quad (36)$$

$$|W| \leq \zeta_G(G', S') + f(|I|) \quad (37)$$

Let  $\alpha = (G', S') \in \mathcal{S}$  such that  $\zeta_G^S(\alpha) \neq \infty$ . Then (36) implies that  $\zeta_G^S(\alpha) \leq |W|$ . This, together with (37), yields that  $|W| - f(|I|) \leq \zeta_G^S(\alpha) \leq |W|$  and (35) holds. Hence the minimum and the maximum finite values of  $\zeta_G^S$  can differ by at most  $f(|I|)$ .

We now assign for each boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$  a *signature*  $\chi_G : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, f(|I|), \infty\}$  in a way that for each  $\alpha \in \mathcal{S}$ ,

$$\chi_G(\alpha) = \zeta_G^S(\alpha) - \min L_G^S \quad (38)$$

In (38), we make the agreement that infinite values remain infinite after subtracting an integer. Notice that it is possible that in (38)  $\min L_G^S$  may not exist and this happens in the extreme case where  $L_G^S = \emptyset$ . In such a case, we set  $\chi_G(\alpha) = \infty$  for all  $\alpha \in \mathcal{S}$ .

We say that  $G_1 \sim G_2$  if and only if  $\chi_{G_1} = \chi_{G_2}$  and observe that  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation. Observe that the number of different signatures of boundaried graphs with label set  $I$  is bounded by some function of  $|\psi|$  and  $|I|$ . Therefore, the same holds for the number of equivalent classes of  $\sim$ . To prove that  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  has FII, it is enough to prove that  $\sim$  is a refinement of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ , which means that if  $G_1 \sim G_2$ , then  $G_1 \equiv_{\Pi} G_2$ . For this, we claim that if  $G_1 \sim G_2$ , then there exists some constant  $c \in \mathbb{Z}$  (depending on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ ) such that

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi. \quad (39)$$

To prove the above statement we first determine the constant  $c$ . As  $G_1 \sim G_2$ , we have that  $\chi_{G_1} = \chi_{G_2}$ . In the extreme case where  $\chi_{G_1}(\alpha) = \chi_{G_2}(\alpha) = \infty$  for all  $\alpha \in \mathcal{S}$ , (39) holds trivially for  $c = 0$  as  $\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}^+$  both sides of the equivalence are false (for completeness, recall that according to the way we defined parameterized problems,  $\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}^-$  both sides of the equivalence in (39) have the same value). From now onwards we assume that both  $\min L_{G_1}^S$  and  $\min L_{G_2}^S$  exist. Therefore, from (38), for each  $\alpha \in \mathcal{S}$ ,  $\zeta_{G_2}^S(\alpha) = \zeta_{G_1}^S(\alpha) - \min L_{G_1}^S + \min L_{G_2}^S$ . We set  $c = \min L_{G_2}^S - \min L_{G_1}^S$ . and we conclude that

$$\forall \alpha \in \mathcal{S} \quad \zeta_{G_2}^S(\alpha) = \zeta_{G_1}^S(\alpha) + c. \quad (40)$$

Let  $(F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}$  and assume that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi$ . This means that there exists a set  $S \subseteq V(G_1 \oplus F)$  such that  $|S| \leq k$  and

$$(G_1 \oplus F, S) \models \psi. \quad (41)$$

Let  $S_F = S \cap V(F)$  and  $S_{G_1} = S \setminus S_F$  and observe that

$$|S_{G_1}| + |S_F| \leq k. \quad (42)$$

We rewrite (41) as follows:

$$(G_1, S_{G_1}) \oplus (F, S_F) \models \psi. \quad (43)$$

Let  $(F', S'_F) \in \mathcal{S}$  be the representative of  $(F, S_F)$ . As  $(F, S_F) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (F', S'_F)$ , (43) implies that

$$\begin{aligned} (G_1, S_{G_1}) \oplus (F', S'_F) &\models \psi \\ \iff (G_1 \oplus F', S_{G_1} \cup S'_F) &\models \psi \end{aligned} \quad (44)$$

From (34), (44) implies that  $\zeta_{G_1}(F', S'_F) \leq |S_{G_1}|$ . From (40), we get  $\zeta_{G_2}^{\mathcal{S}}(F', S'_F) \leq |S_{G_1}| + c$  which, again from (34), means that there exists  $S_{G_2}$ , where

$$(G_2 \oplus F', S_{G_2} \cup S'_F) \models \psi \text{ and} \quad (45)$$

$$|S_{G_2}| \leq |S_{G_1}| + c. \quad (46)$$

We rewrite (45) as follows:

$$(G_2, S_{G_2}) \oplus (F', S'_F) \models \psi. \quad (47)$$

As  $(F', S'_F) \equiv_{\sigma_\psi} (F, S_F)$ , (47) implies that

$$\begin{aligned} (G_2, S_{G_2}) \oplus (F, S_F) &\models \psi \\ \iff (G_2 \oplus F, S_{G_2} \cup S_F) &\models \psi. \end{aligned}$$

Moreover,  $|S_{G_2} \cup S_F| \leq |S_{G_2}| + |S_F| \stackrel{(46)}{\leq} |S_{G_1}| + c + |S_F| \stackrel{(42)}{\leq} k + c$ . We conclude that  $(G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi$  and we proved the one direction of (39). The other direction is symmetric.  $\square$

**Remark 1.** In Definitions 7.1 and 7.2 we defined the notion of strong monotonicity for  $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems where  $S$  is a subset of the vertices of the input graph. If instead we ask  $S$  to be an edge subset then an analogue of Lemma 7.3 can be proved in a similar manner.

Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a graph class. We say that  $\mathcal{G}$  is CMSO-definable if there exist a sentence  $\psi$  on graphs such that  $\mathcal{G} = \{G \mid G \models \psi\}$  and, in such a case, we say that  $\psi$  defines the class  $\mathcal{G}$ . Recall that, given a parameterized graph problem  $\Pi$  and a graph class  $\mathcal{G}$ , we denote by  $\Pi \pitchfork \mathcal{G}$  the problem obtained by removing from  $\Pi$  all instances that encode graphs that do not belong to  $\mathcal{G}$ .

A necessary tool to adapt our results to problems on special graph classes is the following. The proof follows directly by the definitions.

**Lemma 7.4.** *Let  $\Pi$  be a parameterized problem on graphs and let  $\mathcal{G}$  be a CMSO-definable graph class. Then if  $\Pi$  has FII, so does  $\Pi \pitchfork \mathcal{G}$ .*

## 8 Implications of our results

In this section we mention a few parameterized problems for which we can obtain either polynomial or linear kernel using Theorems 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3. In Appendix we provide a full list of the problems amenable to our approach.



**Lemma 8.3.** *If  $\Pi = p\text{-}\mathcal{H}\text{-DELETION}$ , then for every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\Pi_g$  is quasi-coverable.*

*Proof.* Let  $(G, k)$  be a YES-instance for  $\Pi_g$ . This means that there exists a set  $S \subseteq V(G)$  of cardinality at most  $k$  such that none of the graphs in  $\mathcal{H}$  is a minor of  $G \setminus S$ . Let  $H$  be a planar graph in  $\mathcal{H}$ . As  $G \setminus S$  excludes  $H$  as a minor and  $H$  is planar, it follows from [68] that  $\text{tw}(G \setminus S) \leq c_H$  for some constant that depends only on  $H$ . Set  $r = \max\{g, c_H\}$  and take an embedding of  $G$  in a surface of genus at most  $g$ . Observe that  $G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S) \subseteq G \setminus S$ , therefore,  $\text{tw}(G \setminus \mathbf{R}_G^r(S)) \leq \text{tw}(G \setminus S)$ . Thus  $\Pi_g$  has the  $r$ -quasi-coverability property for some  $r$  depending on  $H$  and  $g$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 8.4.** *If  $\Pi = p\text{-}\mathcal{H}\text{-DELETION}$ , then for every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\Pi_g$  has FII.*

*Proof.* Let  $\psi = [\forall H \in \mathcal{H} \ H \not\leq_{\text{mn}} (G \setminus S)]$ . As minor-checking is CMSO-definable,  $\psi$  can be written as a CMSO sentence, hence  $\Pi$  is a  $p\text{-MIN-CMSO}[\psi]$  problem. We now prove that  $\Pi$  has FII. By Lemma 7.3 and 8.2, it suffices to prove that  $\Pi$  is strongly monotone. Let  $G$  be a boundaried graph with label set  $I$  and the boundary  $\delta(G) = B$ . Let  $S^-$  be a set of minimum size such that  $(G \setminus B) \setminus S^-$  does not contain any of the graphs from  $\mathcal{H}$  as a minor and let  $W = S^- \cup B$ .

Let  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$  be a  $\psi$ -feasible structure. We first prove that  $(G \oplus G', W \cup S') \models \psi$ . For this, assume in contrary, that  $R$  is a minor-model of some  $H$  from  $\mathcal{H}$  contained in  $(G \oplus G') \setminus (W \cup S')$ . As  $H$  is connected and  $B$  is a separator of  $G \oplus G'$ ,  $R$  should be either a subgraph of  $G \setminus W = (G \setminus B) \setminus S^-$ , or a subgraph of  $(G' \setminus B) \setminus S'$ . The first case contradicts to the choice of  $S^-$ . In the second case,  $R$  would be a subgraph of  $(G' \setminus B) \setminus S'$ , which contradicts the feasibility of  $(G', S')$ .

We next prove that  $|W| \leq \zeta_G(G', S') + f(|I|)$ , where  $f(|I|) = |I|$ . For  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$ , let  $S^* \subseteq V(G')$  be a set of minimum size such that  $(G \oplus G') \setminus (S^* \cup S')$  contains no graph from  $\mathcal{H}$  as a minor. Thus  $|S^*| = \zeta_G(G', S')$ . Notice that  $G \setminus B$  does not contain vertices from  $S'$ . Therefore for every  $H \in \mathcal{H}$ , every minor-model  $R$  of  $H$  in  $G \setminus B$  should be intersected by vertices from  $S^*$ —otherwise  $R$  would also be a subgraph of  $(G \oplus G') \setminus (S^* \cup S')$ , which is a contradiction. By the choice of  $S^-$ , we have  $|S^-| \leq |S^*|$ . We conclude that  $|W| = |S^- \cup B| \leq |S^-| + |B| \leq |S^*| + |B| = \zeta_G(G', S') + f(|I|)$ .  $\square$

$p\text{-}\mathcal{H}\text{-DELETION}$  contains various problems as a special case. Some examples are presented below (all of them are parameterized by solution size  $k$ ).

- $p\text{-VERTEX COVER}$  : In this problem given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to test whether it is possible to remove at most  $k$  vertices from  $G$  and obtain an edgeless graph. This problem is generated by taking  $\mathcal{H} = \{K_2\}$ .
- $p\text{-FEEDBACK VERTEX SET}$  : In this problem given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to test whether it is possible to remove at most  $k$  vertices from  $G$  and obtain an acyclic graph. This problem is generated by taking  $\mathcal{H} = \{K_3\}$ .

- *p*-DIAMOND HITTING SET : In this problem given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to test whether it is possible to remove at most  $k$  vertices from  $G$  and obtain a graph where no edge is contained in more than one cycle. This problem is generated by taking  $\mathcal{H} = \{K_4^-\}$  where  $K_4^-$  is the graph obtained from a  $K_4$  after removing an edge.
- *p*-ALMOST OUTERPLANAR : In this problem given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to test whether it is possible to remove at most  $k$  vertices from  $G$  and obtain an outerplanar graph. This problem is generated by taking  $\mathcal{H} = \{K_4, K_{2,3}\}$ .
- *p*-ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED TREEWIDTH : In this problem given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to test whether it is possible to remove at most  $k$  vertices from  $G$  and obtain a graph of treewidth bounded by some fixed constant  $t$ . This problem is generated by taking  $\mathcal{H}$  to be the set of minor minimal graphs with treewidth  $> t$  (from the results in [68], this set always contains a connected planar graph).
- *p*-ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED PATHWIDTH : In this problem given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to test whether it is possible to remove at most  $k$  vertices from  $G$  and obtain a graph of pathwidth bounded by some fixed constant  $t$ . This problem is generated by taking  $\mathcal{H}$  to be the set of minor minimal graphs with pathwidth bigger than  $t$ .

### 8.3 Packing minors

We consider the following problem that, in a sense, is dual to the one examined in Section 8.2. Again, let  $\mathcal{H}$  be a finite set of connected graphs containing at least one planar graph.

*p*- $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING  
*Input:* A graph  $G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .  
*Parameter:*  $k$ .  
*Question:* Does there exist  $k$  vertex disjoint subgraphs  $G_1, \dots, G_k$  of  $G$  such  
that each of them contains some graph from  $\mathcal{H}$  as a minor.

For proving the quasi-coverability of *p*- $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING, we need to examine its relation to *p*- $\mathcal{H}$ -DELETION.

**Lemma 8.5.** *If  $\Pi = p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING, then for every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\Pi_g$  is quasi-coverable.*

*Proof.* Given two graphs  $G$  and  $H$ , we define  $\mathbf{cov}_H(G)$ , as the minimum size of a set  $S \subseteq V(G)$  of vertices such that  $G \setminus S$  does not contain any minor model of  $H$ .

We also define

$$\mathbf{pack}_H(G) = \max\{k \mid \exists \text{ partition } V_1, \dots, V_k \text{ of } V(G) \text{ such that} \\ \forall_{i \in \{1, \dots, k\}} G[V_i] \text{ is a minor-model of } H\}.$$

Let  $H$  be a connected planar graph in  $\mathcal{H}$ . To prove that  $\Pi_g$  is quasi-coverable, we show that  $\bar{\Pi}_g = ((\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+) \setminus \Pi_g) \cap \mathcal{G}_g$  has the quasi-coverability property. In order to do so, we prove that if  $(G, k) \in \bar{\Pi}_g$ , i.e.,  $G \in \mathcal{G}_g$  and has no  $\mathcal{H}$ -packing into  $k$  sets, then  $(G, ck)$  is a YES-instance for  $\Pi_g^{\text{hd}}$ , where  $\Pi_g^{\text{hd}} = p\text{-}\mathcal{H}\text{-DELETION}$ , for some constant  $c$  that depends only on  $g$  and  $H$ . By Lemma 8.5,  $p\text{-}\mathcal{H}\text{-DELETION}$  is  $r$ -quasi-coverable, and thus  $\bar{\Pi}_g$  would possess a quasi-coverability property.

Suppose that  $(G, k) \in \bar{\Pi}_g$ . This implies that  $\mathbf{pack}_H(G) < k$ . According to the Erdős-Pósa type of result of [40], for every two graphs  $H$  and  $W$ , where  $H$  is planar and  $W$  is any graph, there exists a constant  $c_{H,W}$ , depending only on  $H$  and  $W$ , such that for every graph  $G$  excluding  $W$  as a minor,  $\mathbf{cov}_H(G) \leq c_{H,W} \cdot \mathbf{pack}_H(G)$ . Let  $W$  be a graph of Euler genus  $g+1$ . As the class  $\mathcal{G}_g$  is closed under taking of minors, we have that every graph in  $\mathcal{G}_g$  excludes  $W$  as a minor. Applying the aforementioned result, we have that  $\mathbf{cov}_H \leq c_{H,W} \cdot k$ , therefore  $(G, c \cdot k)$  is a YES-instance for  $\Pi_g^{\text{hd}}$  for some  $c$  depending only on  $H$  and  $g$ , as required. This implies that  $\bar{\Pi}_g$  has a quasi-coverability property, hence  $\Pi_g$  is quasi-coverable.  $\square$

Notice that when  $\mathcal{H} = \{K_3\}$ ,  $p\text{-}\mathcal{H}\text{-PACKING}$  is the  $p\text{-CYCLE PACKING}$  problem. Here, given an input graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , the objective is to check whether  $G$  contains  $k$  vertex-disjoint cycles. While the general problem has FII for every choice of  $\mathcal{H}$ , we present the proof for this special case in order to clearly explain the machinery that we use for such type of problems. After the end of the proof of Lemma 8.6, we outline how to extend the proof for the general case.

**Lemma 8.6.** *If  $\Pi = p\text{-CYCLE PACKING}$ , then for every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\Pi_g$  has FII.*

*Proof.* By Lemma 8.2, it is sufficient to prove that  $\Pi$  has FII. Let  $G$  be a boundaried graph with label set  $I$  and with boundary  $\delta(G) = B^*$ . The proof proceeds in three stages: the first stage defines some characteristic of the problem that depends on the boundary of the input boundaried graph. The second uses this characteristic to define an equivalence relation on boundaried graphs that will have finite index, and the last one proves that this equivalence relation is a refinement of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$  and therefore has finitely many equivalence classes as well.

*Characteristic.* We define set  $\mathcal{R}$  as the set of all matchings  $R$  (not necessarily maximal) of a complete graph on the vertex set  $B^*$ . Let us remark, that matching  $R \in \mathcal{R}$  is not necessarily a subgraph of  $G$ ; each graph in  $\mathcal{R}$  corresponds to a set of mutually disjoint



pairs from  $B^*$ . We define  $\zeta_G : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  so that, for every  $R \in \mathcal{R}$ , the value  $\zeta_G(R)$  is the maximum number of cycles that can be contained in a subgraph  $J$  of  $G$  such that:

- $\Delta(J) \leq 2$ , and
- for every edge  $\{x, y\}$  of  $R$ ,  $J$  contains an  $(x, y)$ -path.

Let us remark that all  $(x, y)$ -paths of  $J$  are internally vertex disjoint. In case such a graph  $J$  does not exist, we set  $\zeta_G(R) = -\infty$ . Function  $\zeta_G$  can be seen as a way to encode the tables of a dynamic programming for  $p$ -CYCLE PACKING on graphs of treewidth at most  $|I|$ . The proof that follows can be seen as an alternate way to prove that such a dynamic programming algorithm uses tables whose sizes depend only on  $|I|$ .

*Definition of equivalence.* Let  $x$  be the maximum number of vertex disjoint cycles in  $G$ . Thus for every  $R \in \mathcal{R}$ , we have  $\zeta_G(R) \leq x$ . We define the *signature* of  $G$  as the function  $\chi_G : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \{-|I|, \dots, 0\} \cup \{-\infty\}$  such that

$$\chi_G(R) = \begin{cases} \zeta_G(R) - x & \text{if } x - |I| \leq \zeta_G(R) \leq x \\ -\infty & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Notice that the number of different signatures is bounded by some function of  $|I|$ . Given two boundaried graphs  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , we say that  $G_1 \sim G_2$  if and only if  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$  and  $\chi_{G_1} = \chi_{G_2}$ . Clearly, for every  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation with finite number of equivalence classes.

*Refinement proof.* The result will follow if we prove that  $\sim$  is a refinement of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ . For this we claim that if  $G_1 \sim G_2$  then  $G_1 \equiv_{\Pi} G_2$  or, equivalently, there is some constant  $c$ , depending on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , such that

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi. \quad (48)$$

Suppose that  $G_1 \sim G_2$ . Let  $(F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi$ . Our target is to prove that  $(G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi$ . (The proof for other direction of (48) is symmetric and thus omitted.) Let us also assume that  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  are boundaried graphs with label set  $I$  and  $\delta(G_1) = B$ .

The fact that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi$  means that  $G_1 \oplus F$  contains a collection of  $k$  disjoint cycles. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be such a collection of maximum size in  $G_1 \oplus F$ . Clearly,  $|\mathcal{C}| \geq k$ . We partition  $\mathcal{C}$  into four sets  $\mathcal{C}_{G_1}$ ,  $\mathcal{C}_B$ ,  $\mathcal{C}_F^B$ , and  $\mathcal{C}_F$ , where

- $\mathcal{C}_{G_1}$  are the cycles that are entirely inside  $G_1$ ,
- $\mathcal{C}_B$  are the cycles of  $\mathcal{C}$  that are not entirely in  $G_1$  or  $F$ ,
- $\mathcal{C}_F^B$  are the cycles that are entirely inside  $F$  and intersect the boundary  $B$ , and
- $\mathcal{C}_F$  are the cycles that are entirely inside  $F$  and do not intersect  $B$ .

Notice that  $|\mathcal{C}_B| + |\mathcal{C}_F^B| \leq |I|$ . Graph  $G_1 \cap (\bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}_B} C)$  is a collection of internally disjoint paths between pairs of terminals in  $B$ . By replacing each of these paths by edges, we create graph  $R \in \mathcal{R}$ . Graph  $R$  represents the possibility of linking the pairs corresponding to the edges in  $\mathcal{R}$  by disjoint paths inside  $G_1$  in a way that these paths are disjoint from the disjoint cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_{G_1}$ .

For  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}_i^*$  be a maximum size collection of cycles in  $G_i$ , and let  $x_i = |\mathcal{C}_i^*|$ . Notice that  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  depend only on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ . We claim that  $x_1 - |I| \leq |\mathcal{C}_{G_1}|$ . Indeed,  $\mathcal{C}^* = \mathcal{C}_1^* \cup \mathcal{C}_F$  is also a cycle packing in  $G_1 \oplus F$ . If  $|\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| < x_1 - |I| = |\mathcal{C}_1^*| - |I|$ , then  $|\mathcal{C}^*| = |\mathcal{C}_1^*| + |\mathcal{C}_F| > |\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| + |I| + |\mathcal{C}_F| \geq |\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| + |\mathcal{C}_B| + |\mathcal{C}_F^B| + |\mathcal{C}_F| = |C|$ , contradicting the maximality of  $\mathcal{C}$ .

We set  $c = x_2 - x_1$ . By the definition of  $\zeta_G$ , we have that  $|\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| \leq \zeta_{G_1}(R) \leq x_1$ . We conclude that  $x_1 - |I| \leq \zeta_{G_1}(R) \leq x_1$  and thus  $\chi_{G_1}(R) > -\infty$ . As  $G_1 \sim G_2$ , we have that  $\chi_{G_1}(R) = \chi_{G_2}(R)$ , and therefore  $\zeta_{G_2}(R) = \zeta_{G_1}(R) - x_1 + x_2 = \zeta_{G_1}(R) + c \geq |\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| + c$ . This in turn, means that  $G_2$  contains a collection of disjoint cycles  $\mathcal{C}_{G_2}$  and  $|\mathcal{C}_{G_2}| = \zeta_{G_2}(R) \geq |\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| + c$  and  $|E(R)|$  internally vertex disjoint paths that are also disjoint from the cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_{G_2}$ , one for each pair of vertices represented by the edges of  $R$ .

Notice now that if we take the union of these paths with the graph  $F \cap (\bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}_B} C)$ , we obtain a collection  $\mathcal{C}'_B$  of  $|\mathcal{C}_B|$  vertex disjoint cycles in  $G_2 \oplus F$  that are also disjoint with the cycles from  $\mathcal{C}_{G_2}$ . The cycles from  $\mathcal{C}_{G_2} \cup \mathcal{C}_B$  are disjoint from cycles  $\mathcal{C}_F^B$  and  $\mathcal{C}_F$ . Therefore,  $\mathcal{C}_{G_2} \cup \mathcal{C}'_B \cup \mathcal{C}_F^B \cup \mathcal{C}_F$  is a collection of cycles in  $G_2 \oplus F$  that has size at least  $|\mathcal{C}_{G_1}| + c + |\mathcal{C}_B| + |\mathcal{C}_F^B| + |\mathcal{C}_F| = k + c$ . We conclude that  $(G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi$  as required.  $\square$

The proof that, in general,  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING has FII follows the same line as the proof of Lemma 8.5. Instead of cycles we have minor-models of graphs in  $\mathcal{H}$  and instead of paths between terminals of the border, we have *partial models* that are parts of minor-models of graphs in  $\mathcal{H}$  that are cropped by  $G_1$ . The signature  $\chi$  is now encodes all the ways such partial models might be “rooted” in the boundary. This can be done by the “folio” structure introduced in [67] for doing dynamic programming for the minor checking problem and the disjoint paths problem on graphs of bounded treewidth. Variants of folios have been used for similar purposes in [2, 44, 52, 35].

## 8.4 Subgraph Covering and Packing

Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a finite set of connected graphs. We define the following two general problems.

*p*- $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING

*Input:* A graph  $G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .

*Parameter:*  $k$ .

*Question:* Is there a  $S \subseteq V(G)$  such that  $|S| \leq k$  and  $G \setminus S$  contains no subgraph isomorphic to a graph from  $\mathcal{S}$ ?

$p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING

*Input:* A graph  $G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .

*Parameter:*  $k$ .

*Question:* Does there exist  $k$  vertex disjoint subgraphs  $G_1, \dots, G_k$  of  $G$  such  
that each of them contains a subgraph isomorphic to a graph  
in  $\mathcal{S}$ ?

Let us remark that it is not true in general, that if  $\Pi = p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING or  $\Pi = p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING, then  $\Pi_g$  is coverable. However, the problems become coverable if we modify instances by applying the following simple preprocessing rule.

**Redundant Vertex Rule:** For a graph  $G$ , while this is possible, delete a vertex that does not belong to any subgraph of  $G$  isomorphic to any graph in  $\mathcal{S}$ .

A graph  $G$  is  $\mathcal{R}$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -reduced if each its vertex belongs to a subgraph isomorphic to a graph in  $\mathcal{S}$ . We denote by  $\mathcal{R}(\mathcal{S})$  the set of all  $\mathcal{R}$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -reduced graphs.

**Lemma 8.7.** *Let  $\Pi$  be either  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING or  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING. There is a polynomial time algorithm transforming  $(G, k) \in \Pi_g$  into an equivalent instance  $(G', k) \in \Pi_g^{\text{RV}} = \Pi_g \cap \mathcal{R}(\mathcal{S})$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $s$  be the maximum diameter of a graph in  $\mathcal{S}$  and let  $G$  be a graph of genus  $g$ . We can perform the Redundant Vertex Rule in  $O(|V(G)|^2)$  time by checking for every vertex  $v \in V(G)$  if the subgraph  $G^s(v)$  induced by  $\mathbf{B}_G^s(v)$  has a subgraph isomorphic to a graph in  $\mathcal{S}$  containing vertex  $v$ . By Proposition 6.3, the treewidth of  $G^s(v)$  is bounded by some function of  $s$  and  $g$  only and thus for every  $v$  such a check can be performed in time  $O(|V(G)|)$ , see, e.g. [30].  $\square$

We are now ready to prove the following lemma.

**Lemma 8.8.** *Let  $\Pi$  be  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING or  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING. Then  $\Pi_g^{\text{RV}}$  is coverable.*

*Proof.* Let  $s$  be the maximum diameter of a graph in  $\mathcal{S}$  and let  $\Upsilon = p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING. Let  $(G, k)$  be a YES-instance of  $\Upsilon_g^{\text{RV}}$  and let  $S$  be a vertex set of size at most  $k$  such that each subgraph of  $G$  that is isomorphic to some graph in  $\mathcal{S}$  intersects  $S$ . Consider an embedding of  $G$  in some surface of Euler genus at most  $g$ . As  $G \in \mathcal{R}(\mathcal{S})$ , every vertex in  $G$  is within distance at most  $s$  from  $S$ . Therefore,  $\mathbf{B}_G^s(S) = V(G)$ . By Observation 3,  $\mathbf{R}_G^{2s}(S) \supseteq \mathbf{B}_G^s(S)$  and thus  $\Upsilon_g^{\text{RV}}$  has the  $r$ -coverability property for  $r = 2s$ .

Assume now that  $\Psi = p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING. To prove the coverability of  $\Psi_g^{\text{RV}}$ , we will prove that  $\bar{\Psi}_g^{\text{RV}} = ((\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+) \setminus \Psi_g^{\text{RV}}) \cap \mathcal{G}_g$  has the  $r$ -coverability property. Let  $c$  be the maximum number of vertices in a graph of  $\mathcal{S}$ . We claim that if  $(G, k)$  is a NO-instance

for  $\Psi_g^{\text{RV}}$ , where  $G \in \mathcal{G}_g$ , then  $(G, ck)$  is a YES-instance of  $\Upsilon_g^{\text{RV}}$ . Indeed, as  $(G, k)$  is a NO-instance,  $G$  does not contain  $k$  vertex disjoint subgraphs from  $\mathcal{S}$ . A set  $S$  of vertices of size  $\leq k \cdot c$  “hitting” all subgraphs of  $G$  isomorphic to graphs in  $\mathcal{S}$  can be constructed by the following greedy procedure:

*Initialize  $S = \emptyset$  and, as long as  $G$  contains a subgraph that is isomorphic to some graph in  $\mathcal{S}$ , add all its vertices to  $S$  and remove them from  $G$ .*

Notice that the above procedure cannot be applied more than  $k - 1$  times, otherwise the removed graphs would constitute a vertex packing of graphs of  $\mathcal{S}$  in  $G$ . When the procedure cannot be applied anymore, the set  $S$  intersects every subgraph of  $G$  that is isomorphic to some graph from  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $|S| \leq c \cdot (k - 1)$ . Therefore  $(G, ck)$  is a YES-instance of  $\Upsilon_g^{\text{RV}}$ , which is already shown to be coverable. Now the coverability of  $\Psi_g^{\text{RV}}$  follows from Lemma 8.1.  $\square$

Using a modification of the proof of Lemma 8.4, it is possible to show that  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING has FII. The proof that  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING has FII follows the same steps as in the proof of Lemma 8.6. The only difference in all cases is that we work with subgraphs instead of minors.

## 8.5 Domination and its variants

Given two integers  $r, q \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , a graph  $G$ , and a set  $S \subseteq V(G)$ , we say that  $S$  is a  $(q, r)$ -dominating set of  $G$  if for every vertex  $x$  in  $V(G) \setminus S$ , there are at least  $q$  vertices in  $S$  within distance at most  $r$  from  $x$ . We define a series of problems related to domination. In all of them the input is a graph  $G$  and a parameter  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . We mention below the variants and the questions corresponding to each of them.

- $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET: Is there a  $(1, r)$ -dominating set  $S$  of size at most  $k$  in  $G$ ? For  $r = 1$  the problem is known as  $p$ -DOMINATING SET.
- $p$ - $q$ -THRESHOLD DOMINATING SET: Is there a  $(q, 1)$ -dominating set  $S$  of size at most  $k$  in  $G$ ?
- $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET: Is there a  $(1, 1)$ -dominating set  $S$  of size at most  $k$  in  $G$  such that  $G[S]$  is edgeless (i.e.  $S$  is an independent set) and each vertex from  $V(G) \setminus S$  is adjacent to exactly one vertex in  $S$ . This problem is also known as  $p$ -PERFECT CODE.
- $p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET: Is there a  $(1, 1)$ -dominating set  $S$  of size at most  $k$  in  $G$  such that  $G[S]$  is connected?

**Lemma 8.9.** *If  $\Pi$  is one of the following problems:  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $q$ -THRESHOLD DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET, then for every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\Pi_g$  is coverable and has FII.*

*Proof.* For all these problems,  $\Pi_g$  is  $2r$ -coverable by definition because if  $S$  is a  $(q, r)$ -dominating set of  $G$  and  $G$  is embeddable in some surface of Euler genus at most  $g$  then, by Observation 3,  $\mathbf{B}_G^r(S) \subseteq \mathbf{R}_G^{2r}(G)$ .

By Lemma 8.2, it is enough to prove that each of the problems has FII. We start from  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET. Since  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET is a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem, by Lemma 7.3, it is enough to prove that it is strongly monotone. For a boundaried graph  $G$  with label set  $I$  and boundary  $\delta(G) = B$ , let  $S'' \subseteq V(G)$  be a minimum sized  $r$ -dominating set of  $G$ . We put  $W = S'' \cup B$ . For a boundaried structure  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$ , let  $S^* \subseteq V(G)$  be a set of minimum size such that  $S^* \cup S'$  is an  $r$ -dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ . Thus  $\zeta_G(G', S') = |S^*|$ . Observe that  $S^* \cup B$  is an  $r$ -dominating set of  $G$ , hence  $|S''| \leq |S^*| + |B|$ . Therefore,  $|W| = |S'' \cup B| \leq |S''| + |B| \leq |S^*| + 2|I| = \zeta_G(G', S') + 2|I|$ . Also observe that  $W \cup B$  is an  $r$ -dominating set of  $G'$ , and thus  $W \cup S'$  is an  $r$ -dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ . This implies that  $(G \oplus G', S \cup S') \in \Pi$  and the strong monotonicity of  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET follows.

The proof that  $p$ - $q$ -THRESHOLD DOMINATING SET is strongly monotone is based on the same observations as the proof for  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET and thus omitted. To prove that  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET has FII, we use the fact that

$$p\text{-EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET} = p\text{-1-DOMINATING SET} \pitchfork \mathcal{G}^{\text{eds}},$$

where  $\mathcal{G}^{\text{eds}}$  is the class of all graphs that have an efficient dominating set. The equality follows from a theorem of [9], asserting that if a graph  $G$  has an efficient dominating set, then the size of the minimum efficient dominating set is equal to the size of the minimum dominating set of  $G$ . As  $\mathcal{G}^{\text{eds}}$  is CMSO-definable,  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET has FII by Lemma 7.4.  $\square$

In the remaining part of this subsection, we prove that when  $\Pi$  is  $p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET, then  $\Pi_g$  is coverable and has FII. For this we first need some auxiliary definitions and results on connected domination. Given a graph  $G$  and a set  $V(G)$  we say that a dominating set  $S$  is a *component-wise* connected dominating set of  $G$  if for every connected component  $C$  of  $G$ ,  $C[S \cap V(C)]$  is connected. In particular, if  $G$  is connected, then every component-wise dominating set of  $G$  is also a connected dominating set of  $G$ .

We need the following proposition attributed to [28]

**Proposition 8.10.** *Let  $G$  be a connected graph and let  $Q$  be a dominating set of  $G$  such that  $G[Q]$  has at most  $\rho$  connected components. Then there exists a set  $Z \subseteq V(G)$  of size at most  $2 \cdot (\rho - 1)$  such that  $Q \cup Z$  is a connected dominating set in  $G$ .*

**Lemma 8.11.** *Let  $G$  be a graph and let  $B$  be a subset of  $G$ . Let also  $R$  be a component-wise connected dominating set of  $G$ . Then there exists a set  $S \supseteq R \cup B$  that is also a component-wise connected dominating set of  $G$  and has at most  $|R| + 3|B|$  vertices.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the set of connected components of  $G$ . For  $C \in \mathcal{C}$ , let  $B_C = V(C) \cap B$  and  $R_C = R \cap V(C)$ . Observe that  $C[B_C \cup R_C]$  cannot have more than  $1 + |B_C|$

connected components. By Proposition 8.10, there exists a set  $Z_C \subseteq V(C)$  such that  $Z_C \cup R_C \cup B_C$  induces a connected subgraph of  $C$  such that  $|Z_C| \leq 2|B_C|$ . This means that  $|B_C \cup R_C \cup Z_C| \leq |R_C| + 3|B_C|$ . Moreover, as  $R_C$  is a dominating set of  $C$ , the same holds for its superset  $B_C \cup R_C \cup Z_C$ . Therefore, the set  $S = \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}} B_C \cup R_C \cup Z_C$  is a component-wise dominating set of  $G$  that containing  $B \cup R$ . It is now easy to check that  $|S| \leq |R| + 3|B|$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 8.12.** *Let  $G$  and  $G'$  be boundaried graphs with label set  $I$  and boundary  $\delta(G) = B$ . Let also  $S^* \subseteq V(G)$  and  $S' \subseteq V(G')$  such that  $S^* \cup S'$  is a component-wise connected dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ . Then  $G$  contains a component-wise connected dominating set  $S^+$  of size at most  $3|B| + |S^*$ .*

*Proof.* We first prove the lemma under the assumption that  $H = G \oplus G'$  is a connected graph. Let us remark that  $G$  is not necessarily connected. Notice that  $Q = S^* \cup B$  is a dominating set of  $G$ . Let  $C_1, \dots, C_\mu$  be the connected components of  $G$  and, for each  $i \in \{1, \dots, \mu\}$ , let  $Q_i^1, \dots, Q_i^{\delta_i}$  be the vertex sets of the connected components of  $C_i[V(C_i) \cap Q]$ . We claim that  $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq \mu} \delta_i \leq |B| + 1$ . Indeed, if  $S^* \cup S'$  does not intersect  $B$ , then since  $H[S^* \cup S']$  is connected we have that  $G[S^* \cup S']$  is connected and in this case  $Q$  may have at most  $|B| + 1$  connected components, therefore  $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq \mu} \delta_i \leq |B| + 1$ . In case  $S^* \cup S$  intersects  $B$ , then each connected component of  $Q$  should contain at least one vertex of  $B$ , and, again, we have  $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq \mu} \delta_i \leq |B| + 1$ .

We now apply Proposition 8.10 for the sets  $Q_i^1, \dots, Q_i^{\delta_i}$  of the graph  $C_i$ , for each  $i \in \{1, \dots, \mu\}$ . That way we find, for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, \mu\}$ , a collection of sets  $Z_1, \dots, Z_\mu$ , where  $Z_i$  is a connected dominating set of  $C_i$ . This means that  $S^+ = \bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq \mu} Z_i$  is a component-wise connected dominating set of  $G$ . By Proposition 8.10,  $|Z_i| \leq 2(\delta_i - 1) + |V(C_i) \cap Q|$ . We now have that:

$$\begin{aligned} |S^+| &= \sum_{i=1}^{\mu} |Z_i| \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^{\mu} 2(\delta_i - 1) + \sum_{i=1}^{\mu} |V(C_i) \cap Q| \\ &\leq 2|B| + |Q| = 3|B| + |S^*| \end{aligned}$$

as required.

If  $G \oplus G'$  is not a connected graph, then the required component-wise connected dominating set is the union of the component-wise connected dominating sets obtained if we apply the above proof for each of the connected components of  $G \oplus G'$ .  $\square$

We also need the following lemma. The proof is based on the definition of connected dominating set and is omitted.

**Lemma 8.13.** *Let  $G$  and  $G'$  be boundaried graphs with label set  $I$  and boundary  $\delta(G) = B$  such that  $C = G \oplus G'$  is connected. Let also  $S^* \subseteq V(G)$  and  $S' \subseteq V(G')$  be such that  $S^* \cup S'$  is a connected dominating set of  $C$ . Let  $S \subseteq V(G)$  be a component-wise dominating set of  $G$  such that  $B \subseteq S$ . Then  $S \cup S'$  is a connected dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ .*

**Lemma 8.14.** *If  $\Pi = p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET, then for every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\Pi_g$  is coverable and has FII.*

*Proof.* The coverability of  $\Pi_g$  is trivial. To show that  $p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET has FII, we define the following auxiliary problem:

$$\Pi' = \{ (G, k) \mid G \text{ has a component-wise connected dominating set } S \}$$

Notice that  $p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET =  $\Pi' \pitchfork \mathcal{G}_{\text{con}}$ , where  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{con}}$  is the class of all connected graphs. Let us remark that  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{con}}$  is CMSO-definable and  $\Pi'$  is a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem.

Let  $G$  be a boundaried graph with label set  $I$  and boundary  $\delta(G) = B$ . Let  $R$  be a minimum size component-wise dominating set of  $G$ . By Lemma 8.11,  $G$  has a component-wise connected dominating set  $W$  that contains the boundary of  $G$  ( $B \subseteq W$ ) as a subset and  $|W| \leq |R| + 3|I|$ .

For a boundaried structure  $(G', S') \in \mathcal{U}_I$ , let  $S^* \subseteq V(G)$  be a set of minimum size subset of  $G$  such that  $S^* \cup S'$  is a component-wise connected dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ . Thus  $\zeta_G(G', S') = |S^*|$ . From Lemma 8.12,  $G$  contains a component-wise connected dominating set  $S^+$  of size at most  $|S^*| + 3|I|$ . By the definition of  $R$ , we have that  $|R| \leq |S^+| \leq |S^*| + 3|I| = \zeta_G(G', S') + 3|I|$ , therefore  $|S| \leq |R| + 3|I| \leq \zeta_G(G', S') + 6|I|$ .

In order to prove that  $(G \oplus G', W \cup S') \in \Pi'$ , we have to show that  $W \cup S'$  is component-wise connected dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ . Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the set of the connected components of  $G \oplus G'$ , and for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}$ , we set  $G_C = G[V(C)]$ ,  $G'_C = G'[V(C)]$ ,  $S_C^* = S^* \cap V(C)$ ,  $W_C = W \cap V(C)$ ,  $S'_C = S' \cap V(C)$ , and  $B_C = B \cap V(C)$ . Notice that  $C = G_C \oplus G'_C$ . As  $S^* \cup S'$  is a component-wise dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$ , we have that the set  $S_C^* \cup S'_C$  is a connected dominating set of  $C$ . Moreover, the fact that  $S$  is a component-wise dominating set of  $G$ , implies that  $W_C$  is also a component-wise dominating set of  $G_C$ . Recall that the boundary of  $G$  is contained in  $W$ , therefore  $B \subseteq W$  and this implies that  $B_C \subseteq W_C$ . From Lemma 8.13,  $W_C \cup S'_C$  is a connected dominating set of  $C$ . Therefore,  $W \cup S' = \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}} W_C \cup S'_C$  is a component-wise connected dominating set of  $G \oplus G'$  as required.  $\square$

Using ideas similar to those in the proof of Lemma 8.9, it is possible to prove that other problems such as  $p$ -CONNECTED VERTEX COVER,  $p$ -EDGE DOMINATING SET, or  $p$ -CYCLE DOMINATION have FII.

## 8.6 Scattered sets

Given an  $r \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , a graph  $G$ , and a set  $S \subseteq V(G)$ , we say that  $S$  is an  $r$ -independent set if every two vertices in  $S$  have distance greater than  $r$ .

We consider the following problem:

*p*- $r$ -SCATTERED SET  
*Input:* A graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .  
*Parameter:*  $k$ .  
*Question:* Is there an  $r$ -independent set in  $G$  of size at least  $k$ ?

**Lemma 8.15.** *For every positive integer  $r$ , and every  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , if  $\Pi^r = r$ -SCATTERED SET, then  $\Pi_g^r$  is coverable.*

*Proof.* To prove the coverability of  $\Pi_g^r$ , we will prove that  $\Psi_g = ((\Sigma^* \times \mathbb{Z}^+) \setminus \Pi_g^r) \cap \mathcal{G}_g$  has the  $r$ -coverability property for some constant  $c$  that depends on  $g$  and  $r$ . Let  $(G, k)$  be a NO-instance of  $\Pi_g^r$ . This means that  $G$  does not contain any  $r$ -independent set of size  $k$ . According to the result in [29],  $G$  has an  $r$ -dominating set of size  $c \cdot k$  where  $c$  is a constant depending on the Euler genus of  $G$  (actually, the result of [29] holds for much more general classes of sparse graphs that include graphs of bounded Euler genus). Recall that, from Observation 3, given an embedding of  $G$  in a surface of Euler genus  $\leq g$ , we have that  $\mathbf{R}_G^{2r} \subseteq \mathbf{B}_G^r(S)$ , therefore  $\Psi_g$  has the  $c$ -coverability property for  $c = \max\{r, g\}$ .  $\square$

We present in details the proof of the following lemma as it is based on slightly different ideas than the one used in Lemma 8.6.

**Lemma 8.16.** *For every positive integer  $r$ , if  $\Pi^r = p$ - $r$ -SCATTERED SET, then  $\Pi_g$  has FII.*

*Proof.* Using Lemma 8.2, we prove instead that  $\Pi^r$  has FII. Below we prove this fact by adapting the three-stage machinery of the proof of Lemma 8.6.

*Characteristic.* Let  $G$  be a boundaried graph with label set  $I$  and the boundary  $\delta(G) = B$ . Furthermore, let  $\ell_G : I \times I \rightarrow \{0, \dots, r\}$  be a function that for  $i, j \in I$  defines

$$\ell_G(i, j) = \min \left\{ \mathbf{dist}_G \left( \lambda^{-1}(i), \lambda^{-1}(j) \right), r \right\}.$$

That is, the shortest distance in  $G$  between  $\lambda^{-1}(i)$  and  $\lambda^{-1}(j)$  if it is at most  $r$  and if it is more than  $r$  then  $\ell_G(i, j)$  is  $r$  itself. Let also  $\mathcal{S}$  be the set containing all functions mapping the integers of  $I$  to integers in  $\{0, \dots, r\} \cup \{\infty\}$ . Given a  $\sigma \in \mathcal{S}$ , we define  $\zeta_G(\sigma)$  as the maximum size of an  $r$ -independent set  $S$  in  $G$  with the property that for every  $i \in I$ , the distance in  $G$  between  $\lambda^{-1}(i)$  and every vertex in  $S$  is at least  $\sigma(i)$ . As the empty set is always such a set, it holds that  $\forall_{\sigma \in \mathcal{S}} \zeta_G(\sigma) \geq 0$ .



*Definition of equivalence.* Let  $\sigma^{(0)} \in \mathcal{S}$  such that  $\forall_{i \in \lambda(B)} \sigma^{(0)}(i) = 0$ . We also set  $x_G = \zeta_G(\sigma^{(0)})$ . We have that  $\forall_{\sigma \in \mathcal{S}} \zeta_G(\sigma) \leq x_G$ . We define a function  $\chi_G : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \{-\infty\} \cup \{-2t, \dots, 0\}$  as follows:

$$\chi_G(\sigma) = \begin{cases} \zeta_G(\sigma) - x_G & \text{if } x_G - 2t \leq \zeta_G(\sigma) \leq x_G \\ -\infty & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Given two boundaried graphs  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , we say that  $G_1 \sim G_2$  if  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$ ,  $\ell_{G_1} = \ell_{G_2}$  and  $\chi_{G_1} = \chi_{G_2}$ . Notice that for every finite  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation with finitely many equivalence classes.

*Refinement proof.* The result will follow if we prove that  $\equiv_{\Pi^r}$  is a refinement of  $\sim$ . For this we claim that if  $G_1 \sim G_2$  then  $G_1 \equiv_{\Pi^r} G_2$  or, equivalently, that there is some constant  $c$ , depending on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , such that

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi^r \Leftrightarrow (G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi^r. \quad (49)$$

Suppose that  $G_1 \sim G_2$ . This implies that  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$ . Let  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2) = I$  and  $|I| = t$ . Let  $(F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi^r$ . Our target is to prove that  $(G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi^r$  (the other direction of (49) is symmetric).

The fact that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi^r$  means that  $(G_1 \oplus F)$  contains an  $r$ -independent set  $S$  where  $|S| \geq k$ . Let  $B$  be the boundary of  $G_1$ , that is,  $\delta(G_1) = B$  and let  $S_1 = S \cap V(G_1)$  and  $S_F = S \setminus S_1$ . Let also  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  be the labelings of boundaries of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , respectively. We define  $\sigma$  as follows: for  $i \in I$  set  $\sigma(i)$  to be the minimum distance of a vertex of  $S_1$  from  $\lambda_1^{-1}(i)$  in  $G_1$ . By the definition of  $\zeta_{G_1}$ , we have that  $\zeta_{G_1}(\sigma) \geq |S_1|$ . Before we proceed, we need to prove the following claim:

*Claim:*  $|S_1| \geq x_{G_1} - 2t$ . Let  $S'_1$  be an  $r$ -independent set of  $G_1$  such that  $|S'_1| = x_{G_1}$ . Mark in  $S'_1$  all vertices that are within distance at most  $\lfloor \frac{r}{2} \rfloor$  from  $B$  and denote by  $S_1^*$  the set of the non-marked vertices of  $S'_1$ . Notice that  $S_1^*$  is an  $r$ -independent set of  $G_1$ . The proof of the claim is a consequence of the following two subclaims:

*Subclaim 1:*  $|S_1^*| \geq x_{G_1} - t$ . For this it is enough to prove that no more than  $|B|$  vertices can be marked from  $S'_1$ . Indeed if this is not the case, then there should exist two vertices  $x$  and  $y$  in  $S'_1$  that are within distance at most  $\lfloor \frac{r}{2} \rfloor$  from some vertex  $z$  of  $B$ . Then the distance between  $x$  and  $y$  should be less than  $2 \cdot \lfloor \frac{r}{2} \rfloor \leq r$ , a contradiction to the fact that  $S'_1$  is an  $r$ -independent set of  $G_1$ .

*Subclaim 2:*  $|S_1| \geq |S_1^*| - t$ . For this, we mark in  $S$  the vertices of  $G_1 \oplus F$  that are within distance at most  $\lfloor \frac{r}{2} \rfloor$  from some vertex of  $B$ . As above, the marked vertices cannot be more than  $|B|$ . Let  $S^-$  be the set obtained from  $S$  after removing the marked vertices. Notice that  $|S^-| \geq |S| - t$ , therefore  $|S^- \cap V(G_1)| + |S^- \setminus V(G_1)| \geq |S| - t$ . Notice that  $S^- \cap V(G_1)$  is an  $r$ -independent set of  $G_1$ , therefore  $|S^- \cap V(G_1)| \leq x_{G_1}$ . Notice that  $S_1^* \cup (S^- \setminus V(G_1))$  is an  $r$ -independent set of  $G_1 \oplus F$ . Indeed if there are two vertices  $x \in S_1^*$  and  $y \in S^- \setminus V(G_1)$  within distance  $r$ , then either  $x$  or  $y$  would be within

distance  $\lfloor \frac{r}{2} \rfloor$  from some vertex in  $B$ , a contradiction. We obtain that  $|S_1^*| + |S^- \setminus V(G_1)| = |S_1^* \cup (S^- \setminus V(G_1))| \leq |S| \leq |S^-| + t = |S^- \cap V(G_1)| + |S^- \setminus V(G_1)| + t$  and therefore,  $|S_1^*| \leq |S^- \cap V(G_1)| + t \leq |S_1| + t$ .

We just proved that  $\zeta_{G_1}(\sigma) \geq |S_1| \geq x_{G_1} - 2t$ . This means that  $\chi_G(\sigma) > -\infty$ . As  $G_1 \sim G_2$ , we have that  $\ell_{G_1} = \ell_{G_2}$  and  $\chi_{G_1}(\sigma) = \chi_{G_2}(\sigma)$ . By the definition of  $\chi_G$ , we obtain that  $\zeta_{G_2}(\sigma) = \zeta_{G_1}(\sigma) - \zeta_{G_1}(\sigma^{(0)}) + \zeta_{G_2}(\sigma^{(0)}) = \zeta_{G_1}(\sigma) + c \geq |S_{G_1}| + c$  where  $c$  is a constant depending only on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ . This implies that, there exists an  $r$ -independent set  $S_{G_2}$  in  $G_2$  with least  $|S_{G_1}| + c$  vertices and for every  $i \in \lambda_2(B)$ , the distance in  $G_2$  between  $\lambda_2^{-1}(i)$  and the vertices in  $S_2$  is at least  $\sigma(i)$ . The facts that  $\ell_{G_1} = \ell_{G_2}$  and  $\chi_{G_1}(\sigma) = \chi_{G_2}(\sigma)$  together imply that  $S_{G_2} \cup S_F$  is an  $r$ -independent set of  $G_2 \oplus F$  of size  $|S_{G_2} \cup S_F| = |S_{G_2}| + |S_F| \geq |S_{G_1}| + |S_F| + c \geq |S_1| + |S_F| + c \geq k + c$ . We conclude that  $(G_2, k + c) \in \Pi^r$ , as required.  $\square$

## 8.7 Problems on Directed Graphs

Our results also apply to problems on directed graphs whose underlying undirected graph is of bounded genus. In this direction we mention three problems considered in the literature. In all cases the input is a directed graph  $D = (V, A)$  where  $V$  is the set of its vertices and  $A$  is the set of its directed edges (i.e.,  $A \subseteq V \times V$ ).

- $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION [4]: Is there a subset  $S \subseteq V$  of size at most  $k$  such that for every vertex  $u \in V \setminus S$  there is a vertex  $v \in S$  such that  $(u, v) \in A$ ? Such a set  $S$  is called a *directed dominating set* of  $D$ .
- $p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION<sup>2</sup> [48]: Is there a subset  $S \subseteq V$  of size at most  $k$  such that  $S$  is an independent set and for every vertex  $u \in V \setminus S$  there is a vertex  $v \in S$  such that  $(u, v) \in A$ ?
- $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING [49]: Does  $D$  contain a directed rooted spanning tree, an out-branching, with at least  $k$  internal vertices?

In order to formally state our results, we extend the notion of coverability to directed graphs by applying the definitions to their underlying undirected graphs.

**Lemma 8.17.** *The following statements hold:*

- *Let  $\Pi$  be either  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION, or  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING. Then  $\Pi_g$  is a coverable  $p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  problem.*
- *Let  $\Pi$  be  $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION. Then  $\Pi_g$  is a coverable problem and has FII.*

---

<sup>2</sup>In literature it is known as “ $p$ -KERNELS”. We call it differently here to avoid confusion with problem kernels.

*Proof.* Problems  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION and  $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION can easily be seen to be  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems while  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING can be proved to be a  $p$ -MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem. The strong monotonicity of  $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION can be proved using the same arguments as in the proof of Lemma 8.9. This, together with Lemmata 7.3 and 8.2, implies that for  $\Pi=p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION,  $\Pi_g$  has FII.

$p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION and  $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION are coverable by definition. Let  $\Pi=p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING. We claim that if  $(D, k) \notin \Pi$ , then the underlying undirected graph of  $D$  has a dominating set of size at most  $k - 1$ . For this let  $k_0 = \max\{k' \mid (D, k') \in \Pi\}$  and observe that  $k_0 < k$ . Moreover, it also holds that  $(D, k_0) \in \Pi$  while  $(D, k_0 + 1) \notin \Pi$ . These two facts together imply that  $D$  has a rooted directed spanning tree with *exactly*  $k_0$  internal vertices and all other vertices of  $D$  being its leaves. These internal vertices form a dominating set for the underlying undirected graph of  $D$ . As  $k_0 < k$ , the underlying undirected graph of  $D$  has a dominating set of size at most  $k - 1$ . Then the coverability of  $\Pi_g$  follows from the coverability of  $p$ -DOMINATING SET and Lemma 8.1.  $\square$

## 8.8 A direct proof of FII for a minimization problem

Although Lemma 7.3 is very useful for showing that a concrete problem has FII, sometimes a minimization problem may have FII even though it may not be strongly monotone. For an example, consider the following problem. Let  $s \geq 3$  be an integer.

$s$ -CYCLE TRANSVERSAL  
*Input:* A graph  $G$  and a  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .  
*Parameter:*  $k$   
*Question:* Is there an edge subset  $S \subseteq E(G)$  such that  $G' = G \setminus S$  does not contain  
any cycle of length at most  $s$  (i.e.  $G'$  has girth more than  $s$ )?

Notice that for each integer  $s \geq 3$ , the above problem is the edge deletion counterpart of EDGE- $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING when  $\mathcal{S}$  contains the cycles of size at least 3 and at most  $s$ .

**Lemma 8.18.** *If  $\Pi^s = s$ -CYCLE TRANSVERSAL, then  $\Pi_g^s$  has FII.*

*Proof.* Using Lemma 8.2, we prove instead that  $\Pi^s$  has FII. We present the proof in three stages, as we did in the cases of Lemmata 8.6 and 8.16.

*Characteristic.* Let  $G$  be a boundaried graph with label set  $I$  and the boundary  $\delta(G) = B$ . Let  $|I| = t$ . We use the term  $s$ -cycle for a cycle of length at most  $s$ . Let  $X$  be the set of unordered pairs of distinct indices in  $I$  and  $\mathcal{H}$  be the set containing all functions from  $X$  to  $\{0, \dots, s\}$ . We define the function  $\zeta_G : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that, given a function  $f \in \mathcal{H}$ ,  $\zeta_G(f)$  is the size of a minimum set of edges  $S$  in  $G$  such that the following hold:

- the graph  $G \setminus S$  has girth  $> s$ , and
- for every  $\{i, j\} \in I$ , the distance in  $G' = G \setminus S$  between  $\lambda^{-1}(i)$  and  $\lambda^{-1}(j)$  is at least  $f(i, j) + 1$ . That is,  $\mathbf{dist}_{G'}(\lambda^{-1}(i), \lambda^{-1}(j)) \geq f(i, j) + 1$ .

In case a set satisfying the above conditions does not exist, we set  $\zeta_G(f) = \infty$ .

*Definition of equivalence.* We denote by  $f^{\min}$  the function in  $\mathcal{H}$  where, for all  $\{i, j\} \in X$ ,  $f^{\min}(\{i, j\}) = 0$ . Notice that  $\zeta_G(f^{\min}) < \infty$  (just take  $S = E(G)$ ). We set  $x_G = \zeta_G(f^{\min})$ . The definition of  $\zeta_G$  implies that

$$\forall f \in \mathcal{H} \quad x_G \leq \zeta_G(f) \quad (50)$$

We now define the *signature* of  $G$  as the function  $\chi_G : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, 3\binom{t}{2}\} \cup \{\infty\}$ , where

$$\chi_G(f) = \begin{cases} \zeta_G(f) - x_G & \text{if } x_G \leq \zeta_G(f) \leq x_G + 3\binom{t}{2} \\ \infty & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (51)$$

We say that  $G_1 \sim G_2$  if  $\Lambda(G_1) = \Lambda(G_2)$  and  $\chi_{G_1} = \chi_{G_2}$ . Notice that the number of different signatures is bounded by some function of  $t$  and  $s$ . Clearly, for every  $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\sim$  is an equivalent relation with finitely many equivalence classes.

*Refinement proof.* The result will follow if we prove that  $\sim$  is a refinement of  $\equiv_{\Pi}$ . For this we claim that if  $G_1 \sim G_2$  then  $G_1 \equiv_{\Pi} G_2$  or, equivalently, that there is some constant  $c$ , depending on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , such that

$$\forall (F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z} \quad (G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi \Leftrightarrow (G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi. \quad (52)$$

Suppose that  $G_1 \sim G_2$ . Let  $(F, k) \in \mathcal{F} \times \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi$ . Our target is to prove that  $(G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi$  (the other direction of (52) is symmetric and is omitted).

The fact that  $(G_1 \oplus F, k) \in \Pi$ , means that there is a set  $S \subseteq E(G_1 \oplus F)$  of edges such that all cycles in  $(G_1 \oplus F) \setminus S$  have length  $> s$ . Recall that  $\lambda_G$  is an injective labelling from the boundary of the graph to  $I$ . We denote by  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2$  and  $\lambda_F$  the labelings of the boundary graphs  $G_1, G_2$ , and  $F$  respectively. Let  $B = \lambda_1^{-1}(\Lambda(G_1) \cap \Lambda(F))$  and  $B' = \lambda_2^{-1}(\Lambda(G_2) \cap \Lambda(F))$ . Since  $G_1, G_2$  and  $F$  are boundary graphs with label set  $I$  we have that  $|B|, |B'| = |I| = t$ . Let also  $S_{G_1} = E(G_1) \cap S$  and  $S_F = E(F) \cap S$ . The set  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $s$ -cycles in  $G_1 \cup F$  is partitioned into three sets:

- $\mathcal{C}_1$  are the cycles in  $\mathcal{C}$  that are entirely inside  $G_1$ ,
- $\mathcal{C}_F$  are the cycles in  $\mathcal{C}$  that are entirely inside  $F$ , and
- $\mathcal{C}_B$  are the cycles in  $\mathcal{C}$  that contain both edges that are not in  $G_1$  and edges that are not in  $F$ , i.e.,  $\mathcal{C}_B = \mathcal{C} \setminus (\mathcal{C}_{G_1} \cup \mathcal{C}_F)$ .

Observe that  $S_F$  intersects all  $s$ -cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_F$  and the set  $S_{G_1}$  intersects all  $s$ -cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_1$ . Observe that  $S_{G_1} \cap S_F$  contains only edges with both endpoints in  $B$ , therefore  $|S_{G_1} \cap S_F| \leq \binom{t}{2}$ . This implies that

$$|S_{G_1}| + |S_F| - \binom{t}{2} \leq |S|. \quad (53)$$

Recall that  $x_{G_1} = \zeta_{G_1}(f^{\min})$ . We prove the following claim. Let  $x_{G_1}$  denote the cardinality of a minimum sized subset of  $E(G_1)$  intersecting all  $s$ -cycles in  $G_1$ .

*Claim:*  $|S_{G_1}| \leq x_{G_1} + 3\binom{t}{2}$ .

*Proof of Claim:* Let  $S_{G_1}^*$  be a minimum size subset of  $E(G_1)$  intersecting all  $s$ -cycles in  $G_1$ . By definition,  $|S_{G_1}^*| = x_{G_1}$ . Notice that the set  $S_{G_1}^* \cup S_F$  meets all cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_1 \cup \mathcal{C}_F$ . Let  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$  be the cycles of  $\mathcal{C}_B$  that are not met by  $S_{G_1}^* \cup S_F$ .

Our first aim is to find a set  $S_B$  of at most  $2\binom{t}{2}$  edges that intersect all cycles of  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$ . Observe that each cycle in  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$  meets at least two vertices in  $B$ . Let  $W$  be the set of pairs in  $X$  that are met by the cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$ . For each pair  $p = \{x, y\}$ , we denote by  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{left}}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{right}}$ ) the set of all  $(x, y)$ -paths in  $G_1$  that belong to cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$ . We claim that for each  $p = \{x, y\}$  where  $x, y \in B$ , at most one of the  $(x, y)$ -paths in  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{left}}$  can have length at most  $s/2$ . Suppose in contrary that  $P_1, P_2$  are two  $(x, y)$ -paths of  $G_1$  of length  $\leq s/2$ . The union of  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  contains a cycle  $C_{x,y}$  that is entirely in  $G_1$ . By the definition of  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$ , we have that  $C_{x,y}$  does not contain any edge  $e$  from  $S_{G_1}^*$ . This contradicts the fact that  $S_{G_1}^*$  intersects all  $s$ -cycles in  $G_1$ . Therefore, for each  $p = \{x, y\}$  where  $x, y \in B$ , at most one, say  $Q_p^{\text{right}}$ , of the  $(x, y)$ -paths in  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{right}}$  can have length at most  $s/2$ . Using the same arguments on  $F$ , instead of  $G_1$ , it follows that for each  $p = \{x, y\}$  where  $x, y \in B$ , at most one, say  $Q_p^{\text{left}}$ , of the  $(x, y)$ -paths in  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{left}}$  can have length at most  $s/2$ .

We now construct the set  $S_B$  by adding to it, for each pair  $p \in X$ , one edge from the  $Q_p^{\text{right}}$  and one edge from  $Q_p^{\text{left}}$ . As there are at most  $\binom{t}{2}$  pairs in  $X$ , we obtain that  $|S_B| \leq 2\binom{t}{2}$ . We next prove that  $S_B$  meets all cycles in  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$ . For this, let  $C$  be a cycle in  $\mathcal{C}_B^\bullet$ . Clearly, there are at least two internally vertex-disjoint paths contained in  $C$  (these two paths may not contain all the vertices on  $C$ ) that are entirely inside  $G_1$  or  $F$  and have their endpoints in  $B$ . Since  $C$  is an  $s$ -cycle, we have that at least one, say  $Q$ , of these paths should have length  $\leq s/2$ . Let  $x$  and  $y$  be the endpoints of  $Q$  and  $p = \{x, y\}$ . Clearly,  $Q$  belongs in one of  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{left}}$  or  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{right}}$ . W.l.o.g., suppose that  $Q$  belongs in  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{left}}$ . As  $Q$  has length at most  $s/2$ , then  $Q$  is the unique path in  $\mathcal{Q}_p^{\text{left}}$  that has such a length. By its construction,  $S_B$  intersects  $Q$  and, as  $Q$  is a path of  $C$ ,  $S_B$  intersects  $C$  as well.

We just proved that  $S_B$  intersects all  $s$ -cycles in  $\mathcal{C}'_B$  and contains at most  $2\binom{t}{2}$  edges. This implies that  $S_{G_1}^* \cup S_B \cup S_F$  is intersecting all  $s$ -cycles in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By the definition of  $S$ , we have that  $|S| \leq |S_{G_1}^* \cup S_B \cup S_F| \leq |S_{G_1}^*| + |S_B| + |S_F|$ . Therefore,  $|S_{G_1}| + |S_F| - \binom{t}{2} \stackrel{(53)}{\leq} |S| \leq |S_{G_1}^*| + |S_B| + |S_F| \leq x_{G_1} + 2\binom{t}{2} + |S_F|$ . We conclude that  $|S_{G_1}| \leq x_{G_1} + 2\binom{t}{2} + \binom{t}{2}$  and the claim follows.  $\square$

For every pair  $\{i, j\} \in X$ , let  $s(i, j)$  be equal to  $s$  minus the distance between  $\lambda_F^{-1}(i)$  and  $\lambda_F^{-1}(j)$  in  $F$ . We define the function  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  as follows. For every pair  $\{i, j\} \in X$ , if  $\{\lambda_1^{-1}(i), \lambda_1^{-1}(j)\}$  is an edge of  $S_{G_1} \cap S_F$  then define

$$f(i, j) = \max\{1, s(i, j),\}$$

else define  $f(i, j) = s(i, j)$ . The choice of  $f$  and the definition of  $\zeta_{G_1}$ , imply that

$$\zeta_{G_1}(f) \leq |S_{G_1}|. \quad (54)$$

From (50) we have that  $x_{G_1} \leq \zeta_{G_1}(f)$ . Moreover, from (54) and the above claim, we obtain  $\zeta_{G_1}(f) \leq x_{G_1} + 3\binom{t}{2}$ . By (51),  $\chi_{G_1}(f) = \zeta_{G_1}(f) - x_{G_1}$ . Recall now that  $G_1 \sim G_2$ , hence  $\chi_{G_2}(f) = \chi_{G_1}(f)$ . This means that  $\zeta_{G_2}(f) = \zeta_{G_1}(f) + c$ , where  $c = x_{G_2} - x_{G_1}$ , and clearly  $c$  depends only on  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ .

Let  $S_{G_2}$  be a subset of  $E(G_2)$  such that  $\zeta_{G_2}(f) = |S_{G_2}|$ . By the definition of  $\zeta_{G_2}$ ,  $S_{G_2}$  has the following properties:

- (A) the graph  $G_2 \setminus S_{G_2}$  has girth  $> s$ , and
- (B) for every  $\{i, j\} \in X$ , the distance in  $G_2 \setminus S_{G_2}$  between  $\lambda_2^{-1}(i)$  and  $\lambda_2^{-1}(j)$  is at least  $f(i, j) + 1$ .

By the definition of  $f$ , and Properties (A) and (B), all  $s$ -cycles in  $G_2 \oplus F$  that are not entirely in  $F$  are intersected by  $S_{G_2}$ . Hence,  $S' = S_{G_2} \cup S_F$  intersects all cycles in  $G_2 \oplus F$ . Moreover, by the definition of  $f$  we obtain that  $S_{G_1} \cap S_F \subseteq S_{G_2}$ . This implies that  $S' = S_{G_2} \cup S_F = S_{G_2} \cup (S_{G_1} \cap S_F) \cup (S_F \setminus (S_{G_1} \cap S_F)) = S_{G_2} \cup (S_F \setminus (S_{G_1} \cap S_F))$ .

We now have that  $|S'| \leq |S_{G_2}| + |S_F \setminus (S_{G_1} \cap S_F)| = \zeta_{G_2}(f) + |S_F \setminus (S_{G_1} \cap S_F)| = \zeta_{G_1}(f) + c + |S_F \setminus (S_{G_1} \cap S_F)| \stackrel{(54)}{\leq} |S_{G_1}| + |S_F \setminus (S_{G_1} \cap S_F)| + c = |S_{G_1} \cup S_F| + c = |S| + c \leq k + c$ . Therefore  $(G_2 \oplus F, k + c) \in \Pi$  and the lemma follows.  $\square$

## 8.9 Summary of consequences of our results

In this section, we discuss some of the consequences of our main meta-algorithmic results, namely Theorem 1.3 and Theorem 1.1.

We start with the consequences of Theorem 1.3 to minimization problems that have FII.

**Corollary 8.19.** *If  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and if  $\Pi$  is one of the following problems:  $p$ -VERTEX COVER,  $p$ -FEEDBACK VERTEX SET, ALMOST OUTERPLANAR,  $p$ -DIAMOND HITTING SET,  $p$ -ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED TREEWIDTH,  $p$ -ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED PATHWIDTH,  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -DELETION,  $p$ -EDGE DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -MINIMUM-VERTEX FEEDBACK EDGE SET,  $p$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $q$ -THRESHOLD DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -CONNECTED VERTEX COVER,  $p$ -CYCLE DOMINATION,  $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION,  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING,  $p$ -MINIMUM PARTITION INTO CLIQUES,  $p$ -EDGE CLIQUE COVER, and  $p$ - $s$ -CYCLE TRANSVERSAL, then  $\Pi_g$  admits a linear kernel.*

*Proof.* The definitions of  $p$ -VERTEX COVER,  $p$ -FEEDBACK VERTEX SET,  $p$ -ALMOST OUTERPLANAR,  $p$ -DIAMOND HITTING SET,  $p$ -ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED TREewidth,  $p$ -ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED PATHWIDTH have been given in Subsection 8.2 and all of them are special cases of the  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -DELETION problem. They all have FII because of Lemma 8.4 and the quasi-coverability of  $\Pi_g$  follows from Lemma 8.3. We remark that not all of these problems are coverable.

$p$ -EDGE DOMINATING SET asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set  $F$  of at most  $k$  edges such that every other edge shares a common endpoint with some edge in  $F$ . The coverability of  $\Pi_g$  follows by the fact that the endpoints of the edges in  $F$  form a dominating set of  $G$ . Moreover, the  $p$ -EDGE DOMINATING SET problem can be easily expressed as a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem (with edge quantification) and the proof of its strong monotonicity is similar to the one of Lemma 8.9. Therefore it has FII as well. Using similar arguments one can prove that if  $\Pi$ =MINIMUM-VERTEX FEEDBACK EDGE SET – given an undirected graph  $G$  and a positive integer  $k$  the task is to find a spanning tree  $T$  of  $G$  in which at most  $k$  vertices have a degree smaller than in  $G$ , then  $\Pi_g$  is quasi-coverable (however, it is not coverable). Moreover, MINIMUM-VERTEX FEEDBACK EDGE SET has FII because it can be expressed as a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem and can be proved to be strongly monotone with a proof that uses the ideas of Lemma 8.9.

$p$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $q$ -THRESHOLD DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET, are defined in Subsection 8.5. All these problems are coverable and have FII because of Lemma 8.9. Notice that for the first three problems the FII property follows by expressing them as  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems and proving that they are strongly monotone. However,  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET is *not* strongly monotone and the proof that it has FII uses a different idea.

$p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET is also defined in Subsection 8.5. The coverability of  $\Pi_g$  and the FII property is proved in Lemma 8.14. Using similar ideas, the same results can be proved also for CONNECTED VERTEX COVER.

The CYCLE DOMINATION problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set  $S$  of at most  $k$  vertices such that the removal of  $S$  together with its neighbours from  $G$  results in an acyclic graph. This problem can be seen as a common extension of  $p$ -FEEDBACK VERTEX SET and  $p$ -DOMINATING SET.  $\Pi_g$  can be proven to be quasi-coverable with arguments similar to those in the case of  $p$ -FEEDBACK VERTEX SET ( $p$ -CYCLE DOMINATION is not a coverable problem). The problem is easily expressible as a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem and the proof that it is strongly monotone is a blend of the ideas of the proofs of Lemmata 8.4 and 8.9.

$p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION is defined in Subsection 8.7. The coverability and the FII property of  $\Pi_g$  are proved in Lemma 8.17.

$p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING has been defined in Subsection 8.4. The existence of a linear kernel for this problem makes use of the Redundant Vertex Rule (Lemma 8.7), Lemma 8.8 (for coverability) and the ideas in the proof of Lemma 8.4 (for the FII property).

The  $p$ -MINIMUM PARTITION INTO CLIQUES problem asks whether the vertex set

of a graph  $G$  can be partitioned into at most  $k$  sets each inducing a clique in  $G$  (in other words, we are asking for a  $k$ -coloring of the complement of  $G$ ). Let  $S$  be a set containing a vertex from each clique. Notice that  $S$  is a dominating set of  $G$ . Therefore,  $\Pi_g$  is a coverable problem. To prove that it also has FII, one needs to express it as a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem and then to use arguments similar to those of Lemma 8.9 in order to prove that it is strongly monotone.

The  $p$ -EDGE CLIQUE COVER asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a collection of at most  $k$  cliques such that for every edge of  $G$ , both its endpoints belongs to some of those cliques. We observe first that  $\Pi_g$  is quasi-coverable. To see this, just notice that if we consider a set with one vertex from each such clique, then the removal of the closed neighbourhood of this set from  $G$  results to an edgeless graph. The proof that the problem has FII is omitted in this paper.

Finally,  $p$ - $s$ -CYCLE TRANSVERSAL has been defined in Section 8.8. While this problem is not strongly monotone, it has FII because of Lemma 8.18. To prove that it has a linear kernel, one needs first to apply to its instances the following preprocessing routine: *remove each vertex that does not appear in some cycle of  $G$  of length  $\leq s$* . This routine can be seen as a special case of the Redundant Vertex Rule presented in Subsection 8.4 and, with a proof similar to the one of Lemma 8.7, one can show that it produces equivalent instances. Under these circumstances, the coverability of  $\Pi_g$  can be proved following the arguments of Lemma 8.8.  $\square$

We continue with the consequences of Theorem 1.3 to maximization problems that have FII.

**Corollary 8.20.** *If  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and if  $\Pi$  is one of the following problems:  $p$ - $r$ -SCATTERED SET,  $p$ -INDEPENDENT SET,  $p$ -INDUCED MATCHING,  $p$ -TRIANGLE EDGE PACKING,  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL SPANNING TREE,  $p$ -MAXIMUM FULL-DEGREE SPANNING TREE,  $p$ -CYCLE PACKING,  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING,  $p$ -TRIANGLE VERTEX PACKING,  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING, and  $p$ -EDGE CYCLE PACKING, then  $\Pi_g$  admits a linear kernel.*

*Proof.* The  $p$ - $r$ -SCATTERED SET problem has been defined in Subsection 8.6. The coverability of  $\Pi_g^r$  is proved in Lemma 8.15, while the problem has FII because of Lemma 8.16. We stress that the  $p$ - $r$ -SCATTERED SET problem is, in general, not a strongly monotone problem. The  $p$ -INDEPENDENT SET problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set of at least  $k$  mutually non-adjacent vertices. If  $\Pi = p$ -INDEPENDENT SET, then  $\Pi_g$  is coverable using an argument that is very similar to the one of Lemma 8.15. Similarly, one may use the arguments of Lemma 8.16 to prove that the problem has FII. Alternatively, one may express  $p$ -INDEPENDENT SET as a  $p$ -MAX-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem and then prove that it is strongly monotone.

The  $p$ -INDUCED MATCHING problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set of at least  $k$  edges such that no vertex in  $G$  has as neighbours endpoints of more than one edges in this set. The problem is quasi-coverable because every NO-instance without



isolated vertices has a  $(1, 3)$ -dominating of size at most  $k$ . Moreover, the FII property uses ideas of the proof of 8.16. We stress that  $p$ -INDUCED MATCHING is not a strongly monotone problem.

The  $p$ -TRIANGLE EDGE PACKING problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains at least  $k$  triangles such that no two of them have any edge in common. The existence of a linear kernel for this problem makes use of the Redundant Vertex Rule and is based in suitable adaptations of the proofs of Lemma 8.8 (for coverability) and Lemma 8.4 (for the FII property).

The  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL SPANNING TREE problem asks whether a graph  $G$  has a spanning tree with at least  $k$  internal vertices. The coverability of  $\Pi_g$  follows by observing that a NO-instance has a connected dominating set of less than  $k$  vertices. The problem is not strongly monotone and proving that it has FII requires a direct proof that we omit in this paper.

The  $p$ -MAXIMUM FULL-DEGREE SPANNING TREE problem asks whether a graph  $G$  has a spanning tree  $T$  containing at least  $k$  vertices of full degree (a vertex  $v$  of  $T$  has *full degree* if  $N_T(v) = N_G(v)$ ). Clearly, a NO-instance of  $\Pi_g$  cannot have a 2-independent set of size at least  $k$ , otherwise we grow can a spanning tree with  $\geq k$  full-degree vertices by starting from the neighbourhoods of the vertices in such a set. But then, using the arguments of the proof of Lemma 8.15,  $G$  has a dominating set of size  $c \cdot k$  where  $c$  is a constant that depends on the Euler genus  $g$  of  $G$ . This implies the coverability of  $\Pi_g$ . For the FII property we only mention that the problem is not strongly monotone and a specialized proof is required that is omitted in this paper.

The  $p$ -CYCLE PACKING, asks whether a graph contains at least  $k$  mutually vertex disjoint cycles. This is a special case of the  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING problem where  $\mathcal{H} = \{K_3\}$ . For both problems, the quasi-coverability of  $\Pi_g$  follows from Lemma 8.5. The FII property of  $p$ -CYCLE PACKING follows from Lemma 8.6 and this proof can be extended for the general case of the  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING problem, as mentioned in the end of Subsection 8.3. Notice that both problems are neither strongly monotone nor coverable.

The  $p$ -TRIANGLE VERTEX PACKING problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set of at least  $k$  triangles where no two such triangles share some common vertex.  $p$ -TRIANGLE VERTEX PACKING is a special case of the  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING problem where  $\mathcal{S} = \{K_3\}$ . The existence of a linear kernel for these problem makes use of the Redundant Vertex Rule (Lemma 8.7), Lemma 8.8 (for coverability) and the ideas in the proof of Lemma 8.6 (for the FII property).

$p$ -EDGE CYCLE PACKING asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a collection of at least  $k$  mutually edge-disjoint cycles. To prove the quasi-coverability of  $\Pi_g$  observe that a NO-instance, cannot contain a collection of  $k$  vertex disjoint cycles. But then, by the application of Erdős-Pósa property on bounded genus graphs (see, e.g. [40, 56])  $G$  contains a set of at most  $c \cdot k$  vertices meeting all the cycles of  $G$ , where  $c$  is a constant depending on the Euler genus  $g$  of  $G$ . The proof that the problem has FII is omitted.  $\square$

Corollaries 8.19 and 8.20 unify and generalize results presented in [4, 5, 15, 16, 19, 41, 46, 47, 53, 59, 62, 72].

We conclude this subsection with some consequences of Theorem 1.1 for problems that do not have FII.

**Corollary 8.21.** *If  $g \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and if  $\Pi$  is one of the following problems:  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -ACYCLIC DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION,  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING,  $p$ -ODD SET, and  $p$ -EDGE- $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING, then  $\Pi_g$  admits a polynomial kernel.*

*Proof.* The  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DOMINATING SET problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a dominating set of at most  $k$  mutually non-adjacent vertices. The  $p$ -ACYCLIC DOMINATING SET problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a dominating set  $S$  of at most  $k$  vertices such that  $G[S]$  is acyclic. While these problems do not have FII, they can be both expressed as  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problems and are obviously coverable.

Problems  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION and  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING have been defined in Subsection 8.7 and they do not have FII. According to Lemma 8.17, in both cases,  $\Pi_g$  is a coverable  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem.

The  $p$ -ODD SET problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set  $S$  of at most  $k$  vertices such that for every vertex of  $G$ , the number of its neighbors in  $S$  is odd. Clearly, such a set is a dominating set, therefore  $\Pi_g$  is coverable.  $p$ -ODD SET does not have FII. However, it can be expressed as a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem (notice that here we have to use the “counting” expressive power of CMSO).

Given some fixed finite collection of graphs  $\mathcal{S}$ , the  $p$ -EDGE- $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING problem asks whether a graph  $G$  contains a set of at most  $k$  edges meeting every subgraph of  $G$  that is isomorphic to a graph in  $\mathcal{S}$ . For this problem, a linear kernel requires the application of the Redundant Vertex Rule. The coverability of  $\Pi_g$  follows similarly to the proof of Lemma 8.8. EDGE- $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING does not have, in general, FII (while it has FII when if  $\mathcal{S}$  contains only cliques). However, it is possible to formulate it as a  $p$ -MIN-CMSO[ $\psi$ ] problem.  $\square$

Concluding this section, we mention that there are several problems that do not satisfy the conditions of Theorems 1.3 and 1.1.

Apart from the problems mentioned in Corollary 8.20, other examples of  $p$ -max-CMSO problems that do not have FII are  $p$ -MAXIMUM CUT,  $p$ -LONGEST PATH, and  $p$ -LONGEST CYCLE, see [26]. Notice that  $p$ -MAXIMUM CUT is (trivially) quasi-coverable, while  $p$ -LONGEST PATH and  $p$ -LONGEST CYCLE are not. In fact,  $p$ -MAXIMUM CUT admits a trivial  $2k$  kernel on general graphs while  $p$ -LONGEST PATH, and  $p$ -LONGEST CYCLE do not admit polynomial kernels unless  $\text{coNP} \subseteq \text{NP}/\text{poly}$  [12].

As an example of a problem that has FII but it is neither coverable or quasi-coverable, we mention  $p$ -HAMILTONIAN PATH COMPLETION (asking whether the addition of at most  $k$  edges in a graph can make it Hamiltonian). This problem can be expressed as a

$p$ -MIN-CMSO $[\psi]$  and it is possible to prove that it is strongly monotone. Therefore, it has FII. However, none of our results apply on this problem as it is not quasi-coverable. In fact,  $p$ -HAMILTONIAN PATH COMPLETION cannot have a kernel, unless  $P=NP$ , as such a kernelization algorithm, for  $k = 1$ , would be a polynomial algorithm for the HAMILTONIAN PATH Problem.

## 9 Open Problems and Further Directions

This paper gives the first meta-theorems on kernelization, where logical and combinatorial properties of problems lead to kernels of polynomial or linear sizes. Our results are quite general in the sense that they can be applied to a large number of combinatorial problems on graphs on fixed surfaces and generalize a large collection of known results. Still, there are several directions in which our results could possibly be extended. We conclude with some new problems and further research directions opened by our results.

**Further extensions.** The first natural question for further research is if our logical and combinatorial properties can be extended to larger classes of problems. The property that problems should satisfy some kind of coverability or quasi-coverability cannot be omitted. For instance, even though the problem of finding a path of length  $k$  is expressible in first order logic, it does not admit a polynomial kernel on planar graphs, unless  $\text{coNP} \subseteq \text{NP/poly}$  [12]. An interesting question for further research is

- Do all quasi-coverable CMSO problems admit a linear kernel on graphs of bounded genus?

This question is interesting even restricting ourselves to planar graphs.

It is very natural to ask whether our results can be extended to more general classes of graphs. The most natural candidates for such extensions are graphs of bounded local-treewidth [42] and graphs of bounded expansion [63]. The first step in this direction is done in [33].

**Practical considerations.** Our meta-theorems provide simple criteria to decide whether a problem admits a polynomial or linear kernel on graphs of bounded genus. It is expected that for concrete problems, tailor-made kernels will have much smaller constant factors, than what would follow from a direct application of our results. However, our approach might be useful for computer aided design of kernelization algorithms: a computer program can in some cases output a set of rules that transform each protrusion to a minimum size representative and estimate the obtained kernel size. This seems an interesting and far from trivial algorithm-engineering problem. In general, finding linear kernels *with reasonably small constant factors* for concrete problems on planar graphs or graphs with small genus remains a worthy topic of further research.

**Some concrete open problems.** We conclude with some concrete problems that cannot be resolved by our approach. These include  $p$ -DIRECTED FEEDBACK VERTEX SET [21] and  $p$ -ODD CYCLE TRANSVERSAL [66] to name a few. All these problems are expressible in CMSO but none of them are known to be quasi-coverable. For  $p$ -DIRECTED FEEDBACK VERTEX SET no polynomial kernel is known even on planar graphs. For  $p$ -ODD CYCLE TRANSVERSAL a randomized kernel for general graphs was obtained recently in [57] but existence of a deterministic kernel even on planar graphs is open.

**Impact.** The protrusion replacement technique for kernelization was introduced in the preliminary conference version of this paper [13] appears to be useful in different algorithmic approaches. They were used to obtain kernels for a wide set of bidimensional problems on  $H$ -minor-free graphs [33, 38], vertex removal problems on general and unit disc graphs [34], and problems on graphs excluding a fixed graph as a topological minor [39, 54]. It was also used in the design of fast parameterized algorithms and approximation algorithms [36, 37, 35, 50, 55, 54]

**Acknowledgements.** We thank Jiong Guo, Ge Xia, and Yong Zhang for sending us the full versions of [46] and [72]. We also thank the anonymous reviewers of FOCS'09 and J. ACM for their valuable comments on previous versions of this paper.

## References

- [1] Karl Abrahamson and Michael Fellows. Finite automata, bounded treewidth and well-quasiordering. In *Graph structure theory (Seattle, WA, 1991)*, volume 147 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 539–563, Providence, RI, 1993. Amer. Math. Soc.
- [2] Isolde Adler, Martin Grohe, and Stephan Kreutzer. Computing excluded minors. In *Proceedings of the 19th annual ACM-SIAM symposium on Discrete algorithms (SODA 2008)*, pages 641–650. SIAM, 2008.
- [3] Jochen Alber, Nadja Betzler, and Rolf Niedermeier. Experiments on data reduction for optimal domination in networks. *Annals OR*, 146(1):105–117, 2006.
- [4] Jochen Alber, Britta Dorn, and Rolf Niedermeier. A general data reduction scheme for domination in graphs. In *Proceedings of the 32nd Conference on Current Trends in Theory and Practice of Computer Science (SOFSEM 2006)*., volume 3831 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pages 137–147, Berlin, 2006. Springer.
- [5] Jochen Alber, Michael R. Fellows, and Rolf Niedermeier. Polynomial-time data reduction for dominating sets. *J. ACM*, 51:363–384, 2004.

- [6] Noga Alon and Shai Gutner. Kernels for the dominating set problem on graphs with an excluded minor. Technical Report TR08-066, ECCO, 2008.
- [7] Stefan Arnborg, Bruno Courcelle, Andrzej Proskurowski, and Detlef Seese. An algebraic theory of graph reduction. *J. ACM*, 40:1134–1164, 1993.
- [8] Stefan Arnborg, Jens Lagergren, and Detlef Seese. Easy problems for tree-decomposable graphs. *Journal of Algorithms*, 12:308–340, 1991.
- [9] D. W. Bange, A. E. Barkauskas, and P. J. Slater. Efficient dominating sets in graphs. In *Applications of discrete mathematics (Clemson, SC, 1986)*, pages 189–199, Philadelphia, PA, 1988. SIAM.
- [10] Hans L. Bodlaender. A linear-time algorithm for finding tree-decompositions of small treewidth. *SIAM J. Comput.*, 25(6):1305–1317, 1996.
- [11] Hans L. Bodlaender and Babette de Fluiter. Reduction algorithms for constructing solutions in graphs with small treewidth. In *Proceedings of the Second Annual International Conference on Computing and Combinatorics, (COCOON 1996)*, volume 1090 of *Lecture Notes Comp. Sci.*, pages 199–208. Springer, 1996.
- [12] Hans L. Bodlaender, Rodney G. Downey, Michael R. Fellows, and Danny Hermelin. On problems without polynomial kernels. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 75(8):423–434, 2009.
- [13] Hans L. Bodlaender, Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Eelko Penninkx, Saket Saurabh, and Dimitrios M. Thilikos. (Meta) kernelization. In *Proceedings of the 50th Annual IEEE Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science, (FOCS 2009)*, pages 629–638, Atlanta, Georgia, 2009. IEEE.
- [14] Hans L. Bodlaender and Torben Hagerup. Parallel algorithms with optimal speedup for bounded treewidth. *SIAM J. Comput.*, 27:1725–1746, 1998.
- [15] Hans L. Bodlaender and Eelko Penninkx. A linear kernel for planar feedback vertex set. In *Proceedings of the 3rd international conference on parameterized and exact computation (IPEC 2008)*, *Lecture Notes Comp. Sci.*, pages 160–171, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2008. Springer-Verlag.
- [16] Hans L. Bodlaender, Eelko Penninkx, and Richard B. Tan. A linear kernel for the  $k$ -disjoint cycle problem on planar graphs. In *Proceedings of the 19th International Symposium on Algorithms and Computation (ISAAC 2008)*, volume 5369 of *LNCS*, pages 306–317. Springer, Berlin, 2008.
- [17] Hans L. Bodlaender and Babette van Antwerpen-de Fluiter. Reduction algorithms for graphs of small treewidth. *Inform. and Comput.*, 167:86–119, 2001.

- [18] Richard B. Borie, R. Gary Parker, and Craig A. Tovey. Automatic generation of linear-time algorithms from predicate calculus descriptions of problems on recursively constructed graph families. *Algorithmica*, 7:555–581, 1992.
- [19] Jianer Chen, Henning Fernau, Iyad A. Kanj, and Ge Xia. Parametric duality and kernelization: Lower bounds and upper bounds on kernel size. *SIAM J. Comput.*, 37:1077–1106, 2007.
- [20] Jianer Chen, Iyad A. Kanj, and Weijia Jia. Vertex Cover: Further observations and further improvements. *Journal of Algorithms*, 41(2):280–301, 2001.
- [21] Jianer Chen, Yang Liu, Songjian Lu, Barry O’sullivan, and Igor Razgon. A fixed-parameter algorithm for the directed feedback vertex set problem. *J. ACM*, 55(5):21:1–21:19, November 2008.
- [22] B. Courcelle. The monadic second-order logic of graphs. III. Tree-decompositions, minors and complexity issues. *RAIRO Inform. Théor. Appl.*, 26(3):257–286, 1992.
- [23] B. Courcelle. The expression of graph properties and graph transformations in monadic second-order logic. In *Handbook of graph grammars and computing by graph transformation, Vol. 1*, pages 313–400. World Sci. Publ, River Edge, NJ, 1997.
- [24] Bruno Courcelle. The monadic second-order logic of graphs I: Recognizable sets of finite graphs. *Inform. and Comput.*, 85:12–75, 1990.
- [25] Anuj Dawar, Martin Grohe, and Stephan Kreutzer. Locally excluding a minor. In *Proceedings of the 22nd IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS 2007)*, pages 270–279, Los Alamitos, CA, USA, 2007. IEEE.
- [26] Babette de Fluiter. *Algorithms for Graphs of Small Treewidth*. PhD thesis, Utrecht University, 1997.
- [27] Rodney G. Downey and Michael R. Fellows. *Parameterized Complexity*. Springer, Berlin, 1998.
- [28] P. Duchet and H. Meyniel. On Hadwiger’s number and the stability number. In *Graph theory (Cambridge, 1981)*, volume 62 of *North-Holland Math. Stud.*, pages 71–73. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1982.
- [29] Zdenek Dvorak. Constant-factor approximation of the domination number in sparse graphs. *Eur. J. Comb.*, 34(5):833–840, 2013.
- [30] David Eppstein. Diameter and treewidth in minor-closed graph families. *Algorithmica*, 27:275–291, 2000.

- [31] Michael R. Fellows and Michael A. Langston. An analogue of the Myhill-Nerode theorem and its use in computing finite-basis characterizations (extended abstract). In *Proceedings of the 30th Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science (FOCS 1989)*, pages 520–525. IEEE, 1989.
- [32] Jörg Flum and Martin Grohe. *Parameterized Complexity Theory*. Texts in Theoretical Computer Science. An EATCS Series. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2006.
- [33] F. V. Fomin, D. Lokshtanov, S. Saurabh, and D. M. Thilikos. Bidimensionality and kernels. In *Proceedings of the 21st Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms (SODA 2010)*, pages 503–510, Austin, Texas, 2010. ACM-SIAM.
- [34] Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Neeldhara Misra, Geevarghese Philip, and Saket Saurabh. Hitting forbidden minors: Approximation and kernelization. In *Proceedings of the 8th International Symposium on Theoretical Aspects of Computer Science (STACS 2011)*, volume 9 of *LIPICs*, pages 189–200, Dortmund, 2011. Schloss Dagstuhl - Leibniz-Zentrum fuer Informatik.
- [35] Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Neeldhara Misra, and Saket Saurabh. Planar F-deletion: Approximation, kernelization and optimal FPT algorithms. In *Proceedings of the 53rd Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science (FOCS 2012)*, pages 470–479. IEEE, 2012.
- [36] Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Venkatesh Raman, and Saket Saurabh. Bidimensionality and EPTAS. In *Proceedings of the 22nd Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms (SODA 2011)*, pages 748–759, San Francisco, California, 2011. SIAM, SIAM.
- [37] Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, and Saket Saurabh. Bidimensionality and geometric graphs. In *Proceedings of the 23rd Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms (SODA 2012)*, pages 1563–1575, Kyoto, Japan, 2012. SIAM.
- [38] Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Saket Saurabh, and Dimitrios M. Thilikos. Linear kernels for (connected) dominating set on  $H$ -minor-free graphs. In *Proceedings of the 23rd Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms (SODA 2012)*, pages 82–93, Kyoto, Japan, 2012. SIAM.
- [39] Fedor V. Fomin, Daniel Lokshtanov, Saket Saurabh, and Dimitrios M. Thilikos. Linear kernels for (connected) dominating set on graphs with excluded topological subgraphs. In *30th International Symposium on Theoretical Aspects of Computer Science (STACS 2013)*, volume 20 of *Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics (LIPIcs)*, pages 92–103, Dagstuhl, Germany, 2013. Schloss Dagstuhl-Leibniz-Zentrum fuer Informatik.

- [40] Fedor V. Fomin, Saket Saurabh, and Dimitrios M. Thilikos. Strengthening Erdős-Pósa property for minor-closed graph classes. *J. Graph Theory*, 66(3):235–240, 2011.
- [41] Fedor V. Fomin and Dimitrios M. Thilikos. Fast parameterized algorithms for graphs on surfaces: Linear kernel and exponential speed-up. In *Proceedings of the 31st International Colloquium on Automata, Languages and Programming (ICALP 2004)*, volume 3142 of *LNCS*, pages 581–592, Berlin, 2004. Springer.
- [42] Markus Frick and Martin Grohe. Deciding first-order properties of locally tree-decomposable structures. *J. ACM*, 48(6):1184–1206, 2001.
- [43] Martin Grohe. Logic, graphs, and algorithms. In *J. Flum, E. Grädel, T. Wilke (Eds), Logic and Automata-History and Perspectives*, pages 357 – 422. Amsterdam University Press, Amsterdam, 2007.
- [44] Martin Grohe, Ken-ichi Kawarabayashi, Dániel Marx, and Paul Wollan. Finding topological subgraphs is fixed-parameter tractable. In *Proceedings of the 43rd ACM Symposium on Theory of Computing, (STOC 2011)*, pages 479–488, San Jose, California, 2011. ACM.
- [45] Jiong Guo and Rolf Niedermeier. Invitation to data reduction and problem kernelization. *SIGACT News*, 38(1):31–45, 2007.
- [46] Jiong Guo and Rolf Niedermeier. Linear problem kernels for NP-hard problems on planar graphs. In *Proceedings of the 34th International Colloquium on Automata, Languages and Programming (ICALP 2007)*, volume 4596 of *LNCS*, pages 375–386, Berlin, 2007. Springer.
- [47] Jiong Guo, Rolf Niedermeier, and Sebastian Wernicke. Fixed-parameter tractability results for full-degree spanning tree and its dual. *Networks*, 56(2):116–130, 2010.
- [48] Gregory Gutin, Ton Kloks, Chuan Min Lee, and Anders Yeo. Kernels in planar digraphs. *J. Comput. System Sci.*, 71(2):174–184, 2005.
- [49] Gregory Gutin, Igor Razgon, and Eun Jung Kim. Minimum leaf out-branching and related problems. *Theor. Comput. Sci.*, 410(45):4571–4579, 2009.
- [50] Gwenaél Joret, Christophe Paul, Ignasi Sau, Saket Saurabh, and Stéphan Thomassé. Hitting and harvesting pumpkins. In *Proceedings of the 19th Annual European Symposium on Algorithms (ESA 2011)*, volume 6942 of *Lect. Notes Comp. Sc.*, pages 394–407, Berlin, 2011. Springer.
- [51] M. Juvan, A. Malnič, and B. Mohar. Systems of curves on surfaces. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B*, 68(1):7–22, 1996.



- [52] Marcin Kaminski and Dimitrios M. Thilikos. Contraction checking in graphs on surfaces. In *Proceedings of the 29th International Symposium on Theoretical Aspects of Computer Science (STACS 2012)*, volume 14 of *Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics (LIPIcs)*, pages 182–193, Dagstuhl, Germany, 2012. Schloss Dagstuhl–Leibniz-Zentrum fuer Informatik.
- [53] Iyad A. Kanj, Michael J. Pelsmajer, Marcus Schaefer, and Ge Xia. On the induced matching problem. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 77(6):1058–1070, 2011.
- [54] Eun Jung Kim, Alexander Langer, Christophe Paul, Felix Reidl, Peter Rossmanith, Ignasi Sau, and Somnath Sikdar. Linear kernels and single-exponential algorithms via protrusion decompositions. In *Proceedings of the 40th Automata, Languages, and Programming International Colloquium (ICALP)*, volume 7965 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pages 613–624. Springer, 2013.
- [55] Eun Jung Kim, Christophe Paul, and Geevarghese Philip. A single-exponential FPT algorithm for  $K_4$ -minor cover problem. In *Proceedings of the 13th Scandinavian Symposium and Workshops on Algorithm Theory (SWAT 2012)*, volume 7357 of *Lecture Notes in Comput. Sci.*, pages 119–130, Berlin, 2012. Springer.
- [56] Ton Kloks, C. M. Lee, and Jiping Liu. New algorithms for  $k$ -face cover,  $k$ -feedback vertex set, and  $k$ -disjoint cycles on plane and planar graphs. In *28th International Workshop on Graph Theoretic Concepts in Computer Science (WG 2002)*, volume 2573 of *LNCS*, pages 282–295. Springer, Berlin, 2002.
- [57] Stefan Kratsch and Magnus Wahlström. Compression via matroids: a randomized polynomial kernel for odd cycle transversal. In *Proceedings of the 23rd Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms (SODA 2012)*, pages 94–103. SIAM, 2012.
- [58] Stephan Kreutzer. Algorithmic meta-theorems. In *Finite and algorithmic model theory*, volume 379 of *London Math. Soc. Lecture Note Ser.*, pages 177–270. Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2011.
- [59] Daniel Lokshantov, Matthias Mnich, and Saket Saurabh. A linear kernel for a planar connected dominating set. *Theor. Comput. Sci.*, 412(23):2536–2543, 2011.
- [60] Bojan Mohar. A linear time algorithm for embedding graphs in an arbitrary surface. *SIAM J. Discrete Math.*, 12(1):6–26, 1999.
- [61] Bojan Mohar and Carsten Thomassen. *Graphs on Surfaces*. The Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, 2001.
- [62] Hannes Moser and Somnath Sikdar. The parameterized complexity of the induced matching problem. *Discrete Applied Mathematics*, 157(4):715–727, 2009.

- [63] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. Grad and classes with bounded expansion II. Algorithmic aspects. *Eur. J. Comb.*, 29(3):777–791, 2008.
- [64] Geevarghese Philip, Venkatesh Raman, and Somnath Sikdar. Polynomial kernels for dominating set in graphs of bounded degeneracy and beyond. *ACM Transactions on Algorithms*, 9(1):11, 2012.
- [65] W. V. Quine. The problem of simplifying truth functions. *Amer. Math. Monthly*, 59:521–531, 1952.
- [66] Bruce Reed, Kaleigh Smith, and Adrian Vetta. Finding odd cycle transversals. *Oper. Res. Lett.*, 32(4):299–301, 2004.
- [67] Neil Robertson and P. D. Seymour. Graph minors. XIII. The disjoint paths problem. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B*, 63(1):65–110, 1995.
- [68] Neil Robertson, Paul D. Seymour, and Robin Thomas. Quickly excluding a planar graph. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B*, 62:323–348, 1994.
- [69] Paul D. Seymour and Robin Thomas. Graph searching and a minimax theorem for tree-width. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B*, 58:239–257, 1993.
- [70] Stéphan Thomassé. A  $4k^2$  kernel for feedback vertex set. *ACM Transactions on Algorithms*, 6(2):32:1–32.8, 2010.
- [71] Johan M.M. van Rooij. *Exact Exponential-Time Algorithms for Domination Problems in Graphs*. PhD thesis, UU Universiteit Utrecht, 2011.
- [72] Ge Xia and Yong Zhang. On the small cycle transversal of planar graphs. *Theor. Comput. Sci.*, 412(29):3501–3509, 2011.

## A Problem Compendium

In this compendium we present the kernelization status of all problems that have been mentioned in this paper.

### A.1 Minimization problems that have FII and are quasi-coverable – *linear kernels for graphs of bounded genus.*

$p$ -VERTEX COVER,  $p$ -FEEDBACK VERTEX SET,  $p$ -ALMOST OUTERPLANAR,  $p$ -DIAMOND HITTING SET,  $p$ -ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED TREEWIDTH,  $p$ -ALMOST- $t$ -BOUNDED PATHWIDTH,  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -DELETION,  $p$ -EDGE DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -MINIMUM-VERTEX FEEDBACK EDGE SET,  $p$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $r$ -DOMINATING SET,  $p$ - $q$ -THRESHOLD DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -EFFICIENT DOMINATING SET\*,  $p$ -CONNECTED DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -CONNECTED VERTEX COVER,  $p$ -CYCLE DOMINATION,  $p$ -DIRECTED DOMINATION,  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING,  $p$ -MINIMUM PARTITION INTO CLIQUES,  $p$ -EDGE CLIQUE COVER\*, and  $p$ - $s$ -CYCLE TRANSVERSAL\*.

### A.2 Maximization problems that have FII and are quasi-coverable – *linear kernels for graphs of bounded genus.*

$p$ - $r$ -SCATTERED SET\*,  $p$ -INDEPENDENT SET,  $p$ -INDUCED MATCHING\*,  $p$ -TRIANGLE EDGE PACKING<sup>+</sup>,  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL SPANNING TREE\*,  $p$ -MAXIMUM FULL-DEGREE SPANNING TREE\*,  $p$ -CYCLE PACKING\*,  $p$ - $\mathcal{H}$ -PACKING\*,  $p$ -TRIANGLE VERTEX PACKING<sup>+</sup>,  $p$ - $\mathcal{S}$ -PACKING<sup>+</sup>, and  $p$ -EDGE CYCLE PACKING\*.

For all problems with an asterisk “\*”, a direct proof that they have FII is required. For the rest, FII property follow by expressing them as a  $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO problem and proving strong monotonicity. For the problems with a cross “+”, the linear kernel assumes the application of some preprocessing routine.

### A.3 Problems that do not have FII and are coverable $p$ -MIN/MAX-CMSO – *polynomial kernels for graphs of bounded genus.*

$p$ -INDEPENDENT DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -ACYCLIC DOMINATING SET,  $p$ -INDEPENDENT DIRECTED DOMINATION,  $p$ -MAXIMUM INTERNAL OUT-BRANCHING,  $p$ -ODD SET, and  $p$ -EDGE- $\mathcal{S}$ -COVERING.

### A.4 A problem that has FII but is not quasi-coverable.

$p$ -HAMILTONIAN PATH COMPLETION.

### A.5 A quasi-coverable problem that has no FII.

$p$ -MAXIMUM CUT.

### A.6 Problems that do not have FII and they are not quasi-coverable.

$p$ -LONGEST PATH and  $p$ -LONGEST CYCLE.